“课课通”普通高校对口升学系列学习指导丛书

课课通

对口升学考试专题复习与强化训练·英语

●主　编　潘丽萍　　●副主编　陆　美

●参　编　徐亚萍　林惠芳　朱明珠　高　蓉

李慧颖　殷小琴　路　羽　谢　利



電子工業出版社

Publishing House of Electronics Industry

北京 · BEIJING

内 容 简 介

本书是根据对口单招（对口升学）考试大纲及对口单招考试题型，由参与单招命题的名师和有着丰富的单招教学经验的教师精心编写的专题复习用书。

本书紧扣考纲、考点，分类归纳总结，覆盖面广，实用性强。本书用简洁的框架和简练的语言呈现给考生一个清晰的对口单招脉络，分为七个专题，内容涉及语法、情景交际、长对话、完形填空、阅读理解（选择题和翻译题）、任务型阅读和书面表达。每一部分按照“解题策略或精讲 → 样题→ 练习”的思路安排，所选题目经典、典型。练习分为归纳性练习和高考回顾，让学生在自我检测的同时，体会高考真题，为适应高考打下良好基础。

本书可作为中等职业学校参加对口单招（对口升学）考试的高三学生的考前复习冲刺用书，也可作为高一、高二学生的打基础用书。

未经许可，不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。
版权所有，侵权必究。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

课课通对口升学考试专题复习与强化训练. 英语 / 潘丽萍主编. — 北京：电子工业出版社，2015.8
（“课课通”普通高校对口升学系列学习指导丛书）

ISBN 978-7-121-26477-1

Ⅰ. ①课… Ⅱ. ①潘… Ⅲ. ①英语课－中等专业学校－升学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①G718.3

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2015）第 143930 号

策划编辑：张　凌
责任编辑：张　凌
印　　刷：
装　　订：
出版发行：电子工业出版社
　　北京市海淀区万寿路 173 信箱　邮编　100036
开　　本：787×1 092　1/16　印张：15.5　字数：549.12 千字　黑插：8
版　　次：2015 年 8 月第 1 版
印　　次：2015 年 8 月第 1 次印刷
定　　价：42.00 元

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题，请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺，请与本社发行部联系，联系及邮购电话：（010）88254888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 zlts@phei.com.cn，盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 dbqq@phei.com.cn。

服务热线：（010）88258888。

前　言



为了推进职业教育的改革和发展，为了满足广大师生在对口单招或对口升学教学和复习过程中需要一本全面、系统、有针对性的复习资料，我们经过较长时间的精心准备，邀请了参与单招命题的名师和有着丰富的单招教学经验的教师，联合编写了“课课通”普通高校对口升学考试系列学习指导丛书。本书是根据对口单招英语考试题型精心编写的专题复习用书。

本书按照对口单招题型，分类总结归纳，直击考点，强化训练，用简洁的框架和简练的语言呈现给考生一个清晰的考试脉络，让考生与单招真题零距离接触。

本书分为七个专题。每个专题按照“解题策略或精讲 → 样题→ 练习”的思路安排，所选题目经典、典型。练习分为归纳性练习和高考回顾，让学生在自我检测的同时，体会高考真题，为适应高考打下良好基础。

专题一：语法。分四部分，即小词法（名词、代词、数词、介词、冠词、形容词和副词）、小句法（陈述句、疑问句、祈使句、感叹句、强调和倒装）、动词（时态、语态、动词和动词短语、非谓语动词、情态动词、虚拟语气和主谓一致）、复合句（主语从句、状语从句、名词性从句、并列句）。每个部分列出了高考要求，并作归纳性讲解，配以样题示范，然后精选练习，强化训练。“回眸高考”归纳了历届高考真题，让考生与高考亲密接触，为适应高考打下坚实的基础。

专题二：情景交际。首先根据考纲交际功能项目表的 16 个项目，逐个归纳讲解，并配以典型例题让学生体会其用法。然后归纳日常生活中的交际用语考点 30 个和通用职业场景下的交际用语 14 个。最后是长句、摘录和对话理解。这部分的编写，非常精细，值得学生学习背诵。

专题三：长对话；**专题四：**完形填空；**专题五：**阅读理解；**专题六：**任务型阅读。从解题策略、到样题、到练习，每个环节讲解详细到位。特别是阅读理解，配以各种类型的强化训练，完整全面。

专题七：书面表达。根据体裁，分为 20 个类型，每个类型都有思路点拨、范文学习、考点精练。非常适合学生平时学习背诵。

希望本书对参加对口单招考试或者对口升学考试的考生有所帮助。本书中有些地方可能不够完善，希望广大考生在使用过程中给我们提出宝贵建议。

课课通英语编写组

目 录

专题一 语法 …… 1

小词法

一、名词 …… 1
二、代词 …… 6
三、数词 …… 13
四、介词和介词短语 …… 17
五、冠词 …… 23
六、形容词和副词 …… 28

小句法

一、陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句 …… 36
二、简单句句子成分与基本句型 …… 41
三、直接引语与间接引语 …… 43
四、强调句 …… 46
五、倒装句 …… 49

动词

一、时态和语态 …… 55
二、动词和动词短语 …… 63
三、非谓语动词 …… 76
四、情态动词 …… 84
五、虚拟语气 …… 88
六、主谓一致 …… 92

复合句

一、主从复合句 …… 98
二、并列句 …… 112

专题二 情景交际 …… 117

一、考纲交际功能项目 …… 118
二、日常生活中的交际用语考点归纳 …… 124
三、通用职业场景下的交际用语归纳 …… 133

四、长句、摘录和对话理解……140
五、情景交际综合练习……144
六、回眸高考……151

专题三　长对话……157

一、考纲要求……157
二、解题策略……157
三、练习……158

专题四　完形填空……166

一、考纲要求……166
二、解题策略……166
三、练习……167

专题五　阅读理解……178

一、考纲要求……178
二、解题策略……178
三、练习……183
四、回眸高考……206

专题六　任务型阅读……208

一、考纲要求……208
二、解题策略……208
三、练习……209

专题七　书面表达……219

一、考纲要求……219
二、样题和练习……219

专题一　语　法

语法项目表

项　目	内　容
小词法	一、名词　二、代词　三、数词　四、介词和介词短语 五、冠词　六、形容词和副词
小句法	一、陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句 二、简单句句子成分与基本句型 三、直接引语与间接引语 四、强调句 五、倒装句
动　词	一、时态和语态　二、动词和动词短语　三、非谓语动词 四、情态动词　五、虚拟语气　六、主谓一致
复合句	一、主从复合句（定语从句、名词性从句、状语从句）　二、并列句

要求

能够理解并正确使用基本英语语法知识。

分类讲解

小词法

一、名词

要求 掌握名词的数、名词所有格、复合名词、名词作定语、抽象名词、集体名词的用法；要求辨析部分常见名词。

讲解

1. 名词的数

（1）可数名词

① 加-s 或-es 的：boxes，zoos，tomatoes，knives，roofs 等。

② 不规则的：men，women，feet，teeth，children，mice（单数 mouse）等。

③ 单复数同形的：deer，sheep，fish，Chinese，Japanese，works，means 等。

★当物质名词表示份数时，为可数名词。如：Two teas, please. 请来两杯茶。

（2）不可数名词

fun，advice，news，progress，information，weather，furniture，equipment 等。

2. 名词所有格

（1）通常在名词后加 's

Tom's book，the girl's toy，children's books，a five days' journey 等。

（2）无生命的东西通常用“ of ”结构

the window of the house，at the foot of the hill 等。

（3）'s 表示处所或店铺

at the doctor's = at the doctor's office

go to my uncle's = go to my uncle's house

the tailor's / the chemist's = the tailor's / the chemist's shop

（4）双重所有格

“ of + 's 所有格 ”或“ of + 名词性物主代词 ”

a friend of his father's = one of his father's friends 他父亲的一位朋友

a friend of mine 我的一个朋友

3. 复合名词

two shoe shops，men cooks，women doctors，passers-by，grown-ups，sisters-in-law 等。

4. 名词作定语

men workers，women teachers，sports meeting，a five-year plan，a ten-mile walk 等。

5. 抽象名词具体化

a great success，have a good time，it's a pleasure，what a pity，it's a great help 等。

6. 集体名词

集体名词 team，group，audience，class，couple，family，public 等看成一个整体时，用作单数。指该集体的各个成员时，用作复数。

★ My family is a large one.

★ My family all love music.

7. 名词辨析

（1）sight，view，scene，scenery

sight 视力；景物；景象等，如 a sad sight。指“名胜”时用复数，如 see the sights。
view 可数名词，指“从某一特定点看到的东西、景物，尤其是美丽的自然景色”。
scene 可数名词。常指“局部的、具体的风景”，还可指“场景”“场面”“情景”。
scenery 不可数名词，指某地总的大自然风景。

★ Birds have better sight than dogs.

★ We have a fine view of the lake from our hotel window.
★ The amazing scene of sunshine will be always in my mind.
★ Guilin is famous for her fine scenery.

（2）cause，reason，excuse

cause　造成一种事实或现象的原因、起因，后接 of。
reason　说明一种看法或行为的“理由”，后接 for。
excuse　借口。

★ The police are looking into the cause of the accident.
★ You must tell him the reason why you won't accept his offer.
★ Late again! What's your excuse for it this time?

（3）sound，voice，noise

sound　声音、响声，可指人、动物、大自然发出的声音。
noise　噪声、喧闹声，常指不悦耳的、不和谐的嘈杂声。
voice　常指人的声音。说话、唱歌、谈笑都可用 voice。

★ At midnight, he heard a strange sound.
★ The noise of traffic kept him awake.
★ The girl has a beautiful voice.
★ They are talking in a low voice.

（4）common，ordinary，general

common　强调“常见的、人所共有的”，侧重“普通”，反义词 rare。
ordinary　强调“平常的、平凡的、平淡无奇的”，反义词 superior。
general　意为“普遍的、一般的、总的”，反义词 specific。

★ Colds are common in winter.
★ He is an ordinary person and has an ordinary looking.
★ This book is intended for the general reader.

（5）damage，destroy

damage　损坏、破坏，这种破坏是部分性的，损坏的程度不那么严重，还可修复再用。
destroy　破坏、摧毁、毁灭，常指非常严重的毁坏，一般情况下不可以修复再用。

★ The car was not damaged badly in the accident, but five people were seriously hurt.
★ The big fire destroyed the whole house.

（6）trip，travel，tour，journey

trip　非正式用语，常指短距离的、直达目的地的旅行，口语中可与 journey 通用。
travel　泛指旅行、游历，尤指国外旅行，但无路程的含义。可作动词或名词。
tour　周游、观光，强调“漫游、巡视”。常带有“最后回到出发点”的含义。
journey　指陆地上一个地方到另一地方的旅行，也指旅行的路程，一般距离较远。

★ He went on a trip to the seaside during his vacation.
★ Tom plan to travel to Africa.
★ We will have a two-day tour around Suzhou.
★ We made a journey from Paris to New York.

（7）habit，custom

habit　通常指一个人长时间养成的“习惯”。
　　习惯用语 form / get into / have / develop / get rid of / get put of the habit of
custom　指一个民族或一个社会在发展过程中沿袭下来的礼节、风俗和习惯。

★ He has a habit of coughing before he speaks.
★ It’s the custom in China to eat dumplings during the Spring Festival.

8. 固定词组

英语中含有名词的固定词组有很多，往往和介词、动词等一起构成。这需要同学们平时积累。

样题

样题 1. The market isn’t far from here. It’s only _____ bicycle ride.
A．half an hours’　　B．half an hour’s
C．half an hour　　D．an hour and a half
【分析】选择 B。half an hour’s bicycle ride 骑车半小时的路程。

样题 2. The practice of hanging clothes across the street is a common _____ in many parts of Shanghai.
A．look　　B．sight　　C．appearance　　D．scenery
【分析】选择 B。a common sight 常见的景象。

练习一

（　）1. You’ll find this map of great _____ in helping you to get round London.
A．price　　B．cost　　C．value　　D．usefulness
（　）2. We’ve missed the last bus. I’m afraid we have no _____ but to take a taxi.
A．way　　B．choice　　C．possibility　　D．selection
（　）3. He dropped the _____ and broke it.
A．cup of coffee　　B．coffee’s cup
C．cup for coffee　　D．coffee cup
（　）4. Here’s my card. Let’s keep in _____.
A．touch　　B．relation　　C．connection　　D．friendship
（　）5. The manager has got a good business _____ so the company is doing well.
A．idea　　B．sense　　C．thought　　D．thinking
（　）6. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was _____ journey.
A．three-hour　　B．a three hour　　C．a three-hour　　D．three hours

（　）7. The ____ of the room were covered with ____.
A．roofs; leafs　B．roofs; leaves　C．roves; leafs　D．roves; leaves
（　）8._____ it is to go for a picnic on such a fine day!
A．What a fun　B. What fun　C．How fun　D．How a fun
（　）9. Two ____, please. I'm thirsty to death!
A．coffee　B．coffees　C．cup of coffee　D．cups coffee
（　）10. This map may be _____ to you on your trip.
A．of much use　B．of useful　C．use　D．used
（　）11. I keep medicines on the top shelf, out of the children's _____.
A．reach　B．hand　C．hold　D．place
（　）12. If by any chance someone comes to see me, ask them to leave a _____.
A．message　B．letter　C．sentence　D．notice
（　）13. Many countries are increasing their use of natural gas, wind and other forms of _____.
A．energy　B．source　C．power　D．material
（　）14. I'll look into the case as soon as possible. Just have a little _____.
A．wait　B．time　C．patience　D．rest
（　）15. You can take whatever you like because they are free of _____.
A．fare　B．charge　C．money　D．pay

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“名词”高考真题。

（　）1. The Great Wall is one of the _____ in the world. It's about _____ long.（2002）
A．wonder; 6,000 kilometers　B．wonder; 6,000-kilometer
C．wonders; 6,000 kilometers　D．wonders; 6,000-kilometer
（　）2. The teacher gave a _____ to the boys and girls to be quiet.（2003）
A．sight　B．mark　C．hand　D．sign
（　）3. The village is far away from here indeed. It's _____ walk.（2004）
A．a four hour　B．a four hour's　C．a four-hours　D．a four hours'
（　）4. A stranger stopped my car and asked me to give him a _____.（2004）
A．rise　B．lift　C．walk　D．seat
（　）5. The old woman said _____ to the policeman when he showed her the way to the hospital.（2004）
A．hello　B．good-bye　C．thanks　D．sorry
（　）6 When he applied for a _____ in the office of the local newspaper, he was told to see the manager.（2004）
A．situation　B．condition　C．position　D．background
（　）7. Their research on ancient languages seems to have little practical _____.（2004）
A．price　B．cost　C．value　D．usefulness
（　）8. Dr. Jones ordered _____ for the laboratory.（2005）

A．two equipments　　B．two pieces of equipments
C．two pieces of equipment　　D．two equipment pieces

（　）9. We all like the teacher because of his _____ of humour.（2007）
A．manner　B．feelings　C．nature　D．sense

（　）10. Don't leave matches or cigarettes at home within _____ of little children.（2007）
A．hand　B．grip　C．reach　D．hold

（　）11. The foreigner over there is _____ English teacher.（2007）
A．Boris' and Charles　　B．Boris and Charles'
C．Boris's and Charles　　D．Boris' and Charles's

（　）12. Take my _____, young man, and don't drive so fast.（2007）
A．notice　B．advice　C．lesson　D．responsibility

（　）13. Why not take _____ of opportunity to thank the couples for their help?（2008）
A．profit　B．benefit　C．advantage　D．interest

（　）14. Several _____ were trying to save the injured man in the accident.（2008）
A．woman doctors　　B．women doctors
C．women doctor　　D．woman's doctors

（　）15. The experiment turned out to be _____, which was unexpected.（2009）
A．a complete failure　　B．a completely failure
C．completed failure　　D．complete failed

（　）16. Mrs. Brown is a relative of _____.（2011）
A．Mary's mother's　　B．Mary mother's
C．Mary's mother　　D．mother's of Mary

（　）17. Do remember to put such dangerous things as knives out of children's _____.（2012）
A．touch　B．reach　C．sight　D．distance

二、代词

要求 掌握人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、相互代词、指示代词、疑问代词、关系代词、不定代词及 it 的用法。

讲解

1. 人称代词

主格：I，you，she，he，they，we，……
宾格：me，you，her，him，them，us，……

（1）在简短对话中，多用宾格。

★ — I like Chinese. — Me too.
★ — Who's knocking at the door? — It's me.
★ — Tom, go and join your sister in cleaning the house.
— Why me? John is sitting there doing nothing.

（2）在含比较级句子中的 than、as 后用主格、宾格都可以。如：

★ He is taller than I / me.

（3）人称代词顺序为“第二、三、一人称”。如：

★ You, she and I all enjoy the music.

2. 物主代词

形容词性物主代词：my，your，his，her，its，our，their，……
名词性物主代词：mine，yours，his，hers，its，ours，theirs，……

★ These books aren't ours. Ours are new.

★ A sister of his is a nurse.

★ Your brother is almost as old as mine.

3. 反身代词 myself，ourselves，yourself，yourselves，herself，himself，itself，themselves，oneself

★ He thinks more of others than of himself.

固定短语：
enjoy oneself，by oneself，make oneself at home，make oneself understood，
help oneself to…，come to oneself（醒过来），……

4. 指示代词 this，that，these，those

（1）this（these）一般指较近的人或物；that（those）常指较远的人或物。

（2）this 常指后面要讲的事物，有启下的作用；that 则指前面讲到的事物，有承上的作用。

★ I want to tell you this: the Christmas party will be held on Sunday evening.

★ He hurt his arm last week. That's why he didn't come to your birthday.

★ He was ill yesterday. I'm sorry to hear that.

（3）为了避免重复，常用 that 或 those 代替前面已提过的名词。that 代替不可数名词或可数名词单数；those 代替可数名词复数。

★ The weather of Nanjing is colder than that of Changzhou.

★ The ears of a pig are longer than those of a dog.

5. 不定代词

（1）both，either，neither 范围为两个人或物。all，any，none 范围为三者以上。another 泛指三个或三个以上中的任意的另一个。the other 指两个中的另一个。either 两者中的任何一个。

★ Either of the two boys is clever.

★ There are flowers on both sides of the street.　= ...on either side of the street.

★ All the flowers are gone.

★ I don't want this coat. Please show me another.

★ He has two sons. One is a worker, the other is a doctor.

another +数词+名词：
another two students = two more students，another few weeks = a few more weeks

（2）some 一般用于肯定句，any 多用于疑问、否定或条件句。但有特殊用法：

① any 用于肯定句表示“任何”的意思。

★ Any student can do that.
★ He told me that I could take any of them.

② some 用于单数可数名词前表示“某一”。a 也有类似用法。

★ Miss Li went to some place in England.
★ A Miss Li is waiting for you at the school gate.
★ You will be sorry for this some day.

③ 在期待对方回答 yes 时，some 用在表示请求或邀请的问句中。

★ Would you like some tea?（邀请）
★ Mum, could you give me some money?（请求）

（3）each 各个，侧重个体。every 每个，侧重整体。

★ Each of them has seen the film Garfield.
★ We each have got a film ticket. = Every one of us has got a film ticket.
= All of us have got a film ticket.

（4）many 修饰或指代可数名词复数，much 修饰或指代不可数名词，few / a few 修饰或指代可数名词复数，little / a little 修饰或指代不可数名词。

★ We know few of the girls. （few 表示否定“没有几个”）
★ We know a few of the girls.（a few 表示肯定“有几个”）
★ There is little milk in the bottle. （little 表示否定“没有多少”）
★ There is a little milk in the bottle. （a little 表示肯定“有一点”）
★ There are many more eggs in the basket. （many more + 可数名词复数）
★ He doesn't know much more about it. （much more + 不可数名词）

常见搭配：

not a little = very 非常，很	not a bit = not…at all 一点也不
quite a few 相当多（修饰可数名词复数）	quite a little 许多（修饰不可数名词）
only a few 只有几个（修饰可数名词复数）	only a little 只有一点（修饰不可数名词）
many a 许多（修饰可数名词单数，作主语时谓语动词用单数）	

（5）no one / nobody 单独使用，只用于指人；none 强调数的概念，可与 of 短语连用，指人或物。everyone 单独使用，只用于指人；every one 可与 of 短语连用，指人或物。nothing“什么也没有，没有东西”，表示泛指概念。

★ None of us / No one knows when he was born.
★ — Who is in the hall? — No one.
★ — How many students are going to the park? — None.

★ Every one of us works hard at English.

★ Nothing can stop us working hard.

★ — What's in the box?　— Nothing but a piece of paper.

6. 易混的替代词

（1）that 替换单数可数名词或不可数名词，且往往是物；one 替换单数可数名词，ones 替换复数可数名词，人或物都可以。

★ The picture on the left is more beautiful than the one on the right.

★ The coffee produced in Brazil is more famous than that in Mexico.

★ His younger sister is taller than the elder one.

★ I need the plastic bags, not the paper ones.

（2）it 指特定的前面提到过的事物（原物），而 one 用于替换与前提事物有共同之处但并不完全一样的事物（同类）。

★ I bought a car twenty years ago and I am still using it now.

★ I bought a car twenty years ago but I am going to buy a new one soon.

7. it 的相关句型

（1）It is / has been + 时间段 + since sb. did sth.
It will be + 时间段 + before sb. does sth.
It was + 时间段 + before sb. did sth.
It / This is the first（second, third …）time + that sb. has done sth.

★ It is three years since his father passed away.　他父亲去世三年了。

★ It will be hours before he makes a decision.　要过好几个小时他才会作出决定。

★ It was long before the police arrived.　过了很久警察才来。

★ It was not long before she learned those poems by heart.　她没过多久就背会了那些诗歌。

★ It will not be hours before we meet again.　要不了几个小时我们还会再见面的。

★ This is the first time（that）these Europeans have visited the Great Wall.

（2）**虚拟语气：**It is（high）time that sb. did / should do sth.（should 不可省略）
It is suggested（ordered, required ...）that sb.（should）do sth.
It is important（necessary, strange, natural ...）that sb.（should）do sth.
It is a pity（a shame ...）that（should）do sth. ... 表示出乎意料，常译为“竟然”。没有这种意义时，则不用虚拟语气。

★ It is time（that）we handed in our exercises. = It is time that we should hand in our exercises.

★ It was ordered that we（should）arrive there in two hours.

★ It is important that we（should）learn English well.

★ It is a pity that such a thing（should）happen in your class.

（3）**句型：**It + be + 时间点 + when 从句

★ It was already 8:00 p.m. when we got home.

区别 It was at 8:00 p.m. that we got home.（强调句）

（4）**句型：**It is a waste of time doing sth. 做某事是浪费时间
It's no use doing sth. 做某事是没用的
It's no good doing sth. 做某事是没好处的

★ It is no good learning English without speaking English.
★ It's no use crying over spilt milk. 覆水难收。
★ It's a waste of time playing computer games day and night.

（5）It is + 形容词 + of sb. to do sth. 句中的形容词表示主语特征，常见的有：
brave, careless, clever, foolish, honest, kind, lazy, naughty, nice, polite, rude, silly, stupid, wise 等。
It is + 形容词 + for sb. to do sth. 句中的形容词常见的有：
important, necessary, natural easy, safe, common, normal, difficult, dangerous, unusual, rare, impossible, pleasant 等。

★ It is kind of you to do me a favor.
★ It is necessary for you to finish the task at once.

（6）**句型：**It is clear（obvious, true, possible, certain …）that …

★ It is very clear that he's round and tall like a tree.
★ It's certain that he will come here.

（7）**句型：**It happens（seems, looks, appears）that … 其中 It looks（seems）as if … 如果与事实不符，则用虚拟语气。

★ It happened that he met his teacher in the street.（happen 碰巧）
★ It seems that he will be back in a few days.
★ It looks as if he is ill.（真的病了）
★ It looks as if he were ill.（没有生病）
★ It seemed as if he were dying.

（8）**句型：**It is said（reported, suggested…）that … 据说（据报道，有人建议……）

★ It is reported that another man-made satellite has been sent up.
★ It's said that he has gone abroad. = He is said to have gone abroad.

（9）**句型：**It takes sb. + 时间段 + to do sth. 花费某人……做某事

★ It took thousands of people many years to build the Great Wall.

（10）**句型：**It doesn't matter whether（if）…

★ It doesn't matter whether / if they will come.
★ Whether they will come（or not）doesn't matter.（主语从句在句首，不可用 if）

（11）强调句型：It is + 被强调部分 + that / who …

★ It was they that（who）cleaned the classroom yesterday.
★ It is the blackboard that he cleans every day.

（12）形式宾语和形式主语 it

★ It is our duty to clean our classroom every day.
★ They found it difficult that they would finish their work in two days.
★ We think it important to learn a foreign language.

样题

样题 1. Lucy is coming to my house this evening. I will give her ____ to eat.

A．anything deliciously　　B．deliciously anything
C．delicious something　　D．something delicious

【分析】选择 D。不定代词与形容词连用，形容词后置。

样题 2. The headmaster has made _____ clear that we should learn English well.

A．this　　B．that　　C．us　　D．it

【分析】选择 D。四个选项只有 it 可以做形式宾语，真正的宾语是 that we should learn English well。

练习一

（　）1. If you want to change for a double room you'll have to pay_____$15.
A．another　　B．other　　C．more　　D．each

（　）2. The problem of pollution in this city is more serious than _____ other cities.
A．one in　　B．it　　C．in　　D．that in

（　）3. There must be _____ with the computer.
A．something wrong serious　　B．something serious wrong
C．something wrong seriously　　D．something seriously wrong

（　）4. I find _____ hard to learn by heart the spelling of so many words.
A．it　　B．that　　C．that is　　D．them

（　）5. Is this factory _____ they visited last month?
A .the one　　B．that　　C．where　　D．which

（　）6. Some of the stamps belong to me, while the rest are _____.
A．him and her　B. his and hers　　C．his and her　　D．him and hers

（　）7. — Is this jacket all right?
— No, please show me _____.
A．other　　B．others　　C．another　　D．one another

（　）8. Lily and Lucy asked me to come here. But _____ of _____ came.
A．either; them　　B．neither; them
C．none; they　　D．both; they

（　）9. Your iPod is quite nice. Where did you buy ____? I want to buy _____, too.

A．one; one　B．it; it　C．it; one　D．one; it

（　）10. One of the sides of the board should be painted yellow, and _____.

A．the other is white　B．another white

C．the other white　D．another is white

（　）11. — What do you think of the performance?

— _____ interesting. It was a waste of time！

A．Anything　B．Something　C．Everything　D．Nothing

（　）12. ___ is the sun that gives off light and heat, which makes ___ possible for plants to grow.

A．This; them　B. That; those　C．This; it　D．It; it

（　）13. The number of the teachers in their school is larger than _____.

A．that　B．that in them　C．that in theirs　D．that in mine

（　）14. I was disappointed with the film. I had expected _____ to be much better.

A．that　B．this　C．one　D．it

（　）15. The children were catching butterflies in the garden. Some caught a lot, and others caught ____ at all.

A．nothing　B．none　C．no one　D．neither

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“代词”高考真题。

（　）1. She feels _____ impossible to get the work _____ during such a short time.（2001）

A．it; to do　B．it; done　C．this; done　D．this; to do

（　）2. She is _____ good teacher that all of us like her.（2001）

A．so　B．so a　C．such　D．such a

（　）3. Is there _____ in today's newspaper?（2001）

A．anything interesting　B．interesting anything

C．something interesting　D．interesting something

（　）4. These pictures are prettier than those _____.（2001）

A．ones　B．another　C．others　D．the other

（　）5. — Who is playing the piano in the next room?

— _____ is Bob's brother.（2002）

A．This　B．It　C．One　D．He

（　）6. Water can be changed from one form into _____.（2002）

A．another　B．the other　C．others　D．other

（　）7. The book you are interested in isn't _____. It belongs to _____.（2002）

A．mine; hers　B．me; you　C．his; her　D．her; me

（　）8. Don't you think _____ to play with fire?　（2003）

A．children dangerous　B．dangerous with children

C．it dangerous children　D．it dangerous for children

（　）9. — Have you got _____ E-mail address?
— Oh, yes, _____ is NJ2003@hotmail.com.（2003）
A. a; my　　B. a; it　　C. an; mine　　D. / ; it

（　）10. Asia is bigger than _____ continent on the earth.（2003）
A. any other　　B. the other　　C. others　　D. any

（　）11. Mobile phones make _____ easy for people to communicate with each other.（2004）
A. it　　B. that　　C. this　　D. them

（　）12. Take _____ half you like. They are of the same size.（2004）
A. either　　B. every　　C. each　　D. other

（　）13. _____ is a surprise _____ us all _____ she is still alive.（2005）
A. That; to; that　B. It; to; that　　C. It; for; /　　D. It; by; /

（　）14. Most students in our class feel ____ their duty ___ some good deeds for the public.（2005）
A. that; to do　　B. / ; doing　　C. it; to do　　D. that; do

（　）15. _____ doesn't matter whether I attend the meeting or not.（2007）
A. This　　B. That　　C. I　　D. It

（　）16. Be careful or you will hurt _____.（2007）
A. you　　B. yours　　C. your　　D. yourself

（　）17. Shanghai is larger than_____ in China.（2008）
A. any city　　B. any cities　　C. any other city　　D. any other cities

（　）18. Tom said that he would go to see his grandma in the country ____ the next week.（2008）
A. some time　　B. some times
C. sometime　　D. sometimes

（　）19. We haven't enough umbrellas for ____, so some of you will have to share.（2009）
A. nobody　　B. anybody　　C. somebody　　D. everybody

（　）20. — Which of the two caps will you take?
— I'll take _____ because they're too small for me.（2011）
A. none　　B. neither　　C. no one　　D. either

（　）21. To stay awake, he ordered one cup of coffee after _____.（2012）
A. other　　B. the other　　C. another　　D. the others

（　）22. My friend lent me a few reference books, but _____ of them was useful for my school project.（2015）
A. neither　　B. none　　C. either　　D. all

三、数词

要求 掌握基数词和序数词的基本用法、数词的位置，分数、百分数和倍数的用法。

讲解

1. 基数词

（1）构成：

两位数 fifty-five，三位数 four hundred and thirty-five，四位数 two thousand and one。
thousand 千，ten thousand 万，million 百万，billion 十亿
a year and a half = one and a half years 一年半

（2）hundred，thousand，million，billion 表示确切数目时不能加 s；表示不确切数目时，常用“ -s of ”结构。

six thousand students，hundreds of students，thousands of apples

（3）注意下列短语中基数词的位置：

another three cars / three more cars，in the last ten years / in the next three years
two such parks，all the eight passengers

（4）score 二十；scores of … 许多……

★ Lucy has been there scores of times.
★ Five score years ago there was a temple here.

（5）dozen 一打、十二（个）；dozens of 好几十、许多。

★ Two dozen police were sent to the spot to keep order.（24 个警察）
★ I want two dozen of those eggs. 我要这些鸡蛋中的 24 个。
★ I want two dozen eggs. 我要 24 个鸡蛋。
★ Dozens of children were there.

（6）基数词常与名词构成合成词在句中作定语，中间用连字符“ - ”，这时名词只用单数形式。

★ It is a two hundred-word report.
★ He is an eighteen-year-old boy. = He is a boy of eighteen years old.

（7）年代：in the 1970s 在 20 世纪 70 年代。

年龄：

①“ 在某人几十几岁时 ”，用“ in one’s + 整十位数的复数形式 ”。

in my teens 在我十几岁时 in his forties 在他四十几岁时
in her twenties / thirties / fifties / sixties / seventies / eighties / nineties

② at the age of forty 在四十岁时

★ He went to Beijing at the age of twenty-two.
= He went to Beijing when he was twenty-two. 他二十二岁时去了北京。
★ He went to Beijing in his early twenties. 他二十出头时去了北京。

（8）时间：

9:20 → nine twenty，twenty past nine
9:45 → nine forty-five，fifteen to ten，a quarter to ten
8:30 → eight thirty，half past eight
1983 年→ nineteen eighty-three

2. 序数词

（1）构成：first，second，third，fourth，fifth，eighth，ninth，twelfth，thirtieth，fortieth，fiftieth，ninety-third，one hundred and forty-ninth，……

（2）特殊用法：

★ the first two pages of the book

★ He came out first in the contest.

序数词前加不定冠词 a，表示“又一”，“再一”，相当于 another.

★ Would you like a third cup of tea?

★ We'll have to do it a second time.

3. 分数、百分数和倍数

（1）分数：分子用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于 1 时，分母用复数形式。

one（a）third 三分之一　　two thirds 三分之二

a quarter / one fourth 四分之一　　four fifths 五分之四

（2）百分数：用 percent 表示，percent 用单数。

twenty-nine percent　29%　　two percent of the clerks 职员中的 2%

（3）倍数：基数词 + times，特例是 once（一次），twice（两次）。

常用句型：

倍数 + 比较级 + than…

倍数 + as + 原级 + as…

倍数 + the size（weight, length, width, height…）of…

★ The grain output（产量）is twice higher this year than that of last year.

★ Our classroom is five times as big as yours.

★ The red ball is 5 times the size of the blue one.

样题

样题 1. The old farmer still works hard though he is _____.

A．in the nineties　　B．in his ninety

C．in nineties　　D．in his nineties

【分析】选择 D。in his nineties 在他九十几岁时。

样题 2. The film will begin at _____. Let's go by bike at once.

A．thirty to eight　　B．ten to eight

C．thirty-five past seven　　D．forty past seven

【分析】选择 B。考查时间的表达法。ten to eight 七点五十分。

练习一

（　）1. The old woman went to the market, _____ eggs and returned home.

A．buying two dozens　　B．buying two dozens of

C．bought two dozen　　D．to buy dozen of

（　）2.Mr. and Mrs. Smith went to China for a ____ tour _____.

A．seven days; in their seventy　　B．seven-day; at their seventies

C．seven-day; in their seventies　　D．seven-days; for their seventies

（　）3. The population of China is more than 1.5 million and _____ of the population _____ farmers.

A．two thirds; is　　B．two-thirds; is

C．two thirds; are　　D．two-thirds; are

（　）4. He has won the first place in the _____ race in the sports meeting.

A．100-meters　　B．100's meters

C．100 meter's　　D.100-meter

（　）5. We have produced _____ this year as we did in 2003.

A．as much cotton twice　　B．as twice much cotton

C．much as twice cotton　　D．twice as much cotton

（　）6. The earth is about _____ as the moon.

A．as fifty time big　　B．fifty times as big

C．as big fifty time　　D．fifty as times big

（　）7. Mr. Smith ____ me to buy several ____ eggs for the dinner party.

A．asked; dozen　　B．suggested; dozens of

C．had; dozen　　D．persuaded; dozens

（　）8. Who is that man, _____ in the front row?

A．one　　B．the one　　C．first　　D．the first

（　）9. Strings of the same thickness made of nylon are ___.

A．five times stronger than those　　B．five time stronger than those

C．five times strong than those　　D．five times stronger as those

（　）10. A ____ boy can sing the English song very well.

A．ten-years-old　　B．ten years old

C．ten-year-old　　D．fifth years old

（　）11. It is not rare in _____ that people in _____ fifties are going to university for further education.

A．90s; the　　B．the 90s; /　　C．90s; their　　D．the 90s; their

（　）12. — What can I do for you? — I'd like to take ___ these tomatoes.

A．two dozen of　　B. two dozen

C．two dozens　　D．two dozens of

（　）13. — Excuse me, can I get in from here? — Sorry, but you can go from ___.

A．the Four Gate　　B．Fourth Gate

C．the Gate Fourth　　D．Gate Four

（　）14. — Did you buy anything at the clothing sale?

— Yes, I bought three_____ ties for just _____ dollars.

A．five-dollar; twelve　　B．five-dollar; twelfth

C．five-dollars; twelve　　D．five-dollars; twelfth

（　）15. All those second-hand goods are sold at ____ before.

A．30% as lower price as　　B．as 30% lower price as

C．30% as low a price as　　D．30% lower price than

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“数词”高考真题。

（　）1. He has been to the town ____ times. So he is familiar with the things there.（2001）

A．a lot　　B．quite some　　C．a bit　　D．dozens of

（　）2. In our city, about _____ of people can get _____ yuan a month.（2003）

A．three fifths; two thousands　　B．three fifth; two thousand

C．three fifths; two thousand　　D．three fifth; two thousands

（　）3. David has been to Oxford _____ times since 1990.（2003）

A．a lot　　B．much　　C．a good deal of　　D．dozens of

（　）4. The hero of the film is a pianist in his _____.（2011）

A．thirty　　B．thirtieth　　C．thirties　　D．thirty’s

（　）5. About _____ of the students in our class are able to describe that place in English.（2012）

A．two-third　　B．two-three

C．two-threes　　D．two-thirds

四、介词和介词短语

要求　掌握时间介词、地点介词、方位介词等以及重要的介词短语。

讲解

1. 时间介词

（1）in + 年、月、季节及早上、下午、晚上

on + 具体某一天，或某一天的上午、下午、晚上

at + 钟点、节日（at Christmas）

during + 时间段

★ She will arrive in Paris on the morning of July 9.

★ The twins were born on a rainy day.

★ We finish our lessons at 11:30 and then have a rest at noon.

（2）in + 时间段：在……内，在……之后（多用于将来时）

after + 时间段：在……之后（多用于过去时）

★ Mr. Brown has gone to Canada. He will be back in two weeks.

★ Our manager came back after an hour / an hour later.

（3）for + 时间段

since + 时间段 + ago

since + 时间点
since + 从句（一般过去时）

★ I have known Jay for over ten years.
★ The old man has been away since two years ago.
★ He came here in 2012, and he has lived here since 2012.
★ It has been three years since he graduated from this school.

2. 地点介词

（1）on 在……的上面，与表面接触
over 在……的正上方，不接触表面
under 在……的正下方（是 on，over 的反义词）
above 在……上方，在……以上。反义词 below 在……下方，在……以下

★ Look! There is a bridge over the river which lies beside my house.
★ Can you see the bread on the plate over there?
★ The fan over us is a new one.
★ This weekend the temperature will fall below / above zero at night.

（2）in + 大地方
at + 小地方
on + 门牌，某层楼

★ My uncle live at F12 on the fifth floor.
★ They arrived in Beijing at 12:00 and waited for a bus at the station to the hotel.

3. 方位介词

（1）in 在某一范围之内
to 与……不接壤（相望）
on 与某地相邻、接壤

★ China lies in the east of Asia and Taiwan lies to the southeast of Fujian.
★ Mongolia（蒙古）is on the north of China.

（2）across 表面经过
through 中间穿过

★ The sunshine comes into the room through the window.
★ If you want to arrive at the hospital earlier, you can go across the road here.
★ Tom can swim across the river within 5 minutes.
★ It took him one and a half hours to drive through the street.

4. 表示方式、方法、手段的介词

in 用某种材料、语言
with 用某种工具、某物
by 用某种方式、方法、手段

★ My mother often goes to work by car.
★ I like listening to the song sung in English.
★ Teachers write on the paper in red ink and the blackboard with a piece of chalk.

5. 其他易混介词

between 在两者之间，在两两之间
among 在……当中（三者或以上）
during 在……期间（指时间）

★ Some shopping malls open between 9:00 a.m. and 9:30 p.m. during the National Day.
★ Villagers used to live among the mountains in the past.
★ He never has any snacks between meals.

except 除……之外，不包括除掉的人或物。类似 with the exception of
besides 除……之外还，包括 besides 后的人或物。句中常有 also、other 等词，等同于 in addition to。

★ Everyone went to the playground except Tom.
★ I can speak two other foreign languages besides English.

6. 常见的介词短语

in addition to　除了……外还
in place of　代替
by no means　绝不
by all means　当然可以
in the front of　在……的前面（外部）
with the help of　在……帮助下
by the way　顺便说，顺便问
in the end　最后，最终
at the end of　在……尽头 / 在……结束时
ahead of time　提前
out of danger　脱离危险
out of order　出故障，坏了
in a low voice　低声地
in public　公开地
step by step　逐渐地
catch sb. by the arm　抓住某人的手臂
slap sb. in the face　打某人的脸
with the intention of doing sth.　打算做某事
in charge of　负责
be absent from　不在，缺席
be addicted to　沉溺于
instead of　代替
by means of　凭借
by any means　无论如何
in front of　在……的前面（外部）
in honor of　为了纪念……
in the way　挡路
on one's way　在去……的路上
out of one's reach　在……范围外，够不着
by the end of　到……为止
in danger　处于危险之中
in order　秩序良好
in a hurry　匆忙地
in surprise　惊讶地
within one's reach　够得着
hand in hand　手拉手
hit sb. on the head　打某人的头
be of value to …　对……有价值
after graduation　毕业后
in the charge of sb.　由……负责
be present from　出席
be accepted into a university　被大学录取

be based on　以……为基础
be bound to　一定；注定会
be capable of doing　能做
be blind to　对……视而不见
be located in / be situated in　位于
be crowded with　挤满了……
be sick of　对……感到厌烦
be determined to do sth.　决定做某事
be fit for　适于
be fated to do sth.　注定做某事
be involved in　涉及；参与
be popular with　受……喜爱
be sensitive to　对……敏感
be used to do sth.　被用来做某事
be used to doing sth.　习惯于做某事
be aimed at　目的是
be concerned about　担心，关心
be concerned with　涉及，关心
be proud of　为……自豪
be crazy about / be fond of　热衷，着迷
be curious about　好奇，想知道
be covered with　被……覆盖
（sth.）be familiar to sb.　为……所熟悉
（sb.）be familiar with sth.　熟悉，通晓
be supposed to do sth.　理应做某事
be particular about　挑剔，讲究
be responsible for　负责
be suitable for　适合
used to do sth.　过去常常做某事

介词短语在对口单招考试的英语中有很多，尤其是动词或形容词与介词的搭配，这里不再一一列出，介词短语的积累要靠平时。

样题

样题 1. Can you tell me the differences _____ the two pictures ____ color?

A．between; in　B．between; of　C．of; in　D．of; between

【分析】选择 A。between 在两者之间，in color 在颜色方面。

样题 2. It's very kind _____ you not to laugh _____ Mary though she is ugly.

A．of; to　B．for; to　C．for; at　D．of; at

【分析】选择 D。kind 表达人的品性，固定句型 It's kind of sb.（not）to do sth.。laugh at 固定词组，嘲笑。

练习一

（　）1. Your room is comfortable to live in _____ the furniture in it looks older.

A．except　B．except that　C．except for　D．except when

（　）2. — Jim failed again in the math exam.

— Don't scold him too much. _____, he has tried his best.

A．After all　B．Above all　C．At all　D．In all

（　）3. I shall stay in the hotel all day _____ there is news of the missing child.

A．in case　B．no matter　C．in any case　D．ever since

（　）4. The conference has been held to discuss the effects of tourism _____ wildlife in the area.

A．in　B．on　C．at　D．with

（　）5. The accident is reported to have occurred _____ the first Sunday in February.

A．at　B．on　C．in　D．to

（　）6. I like walking _____ the river after supper.

A．across　　B．along　　C．through　　D．above

（　）7. The ad calls _____ the audience _____ respect the old.

A．for; to　　B．at; to　　C．for; for　　D．on; to

（　）8. Our English teacher is a simple man, who doesn't care _____ his clothes.

A．of　　B．about　　C．for　　D．after

（　）9. The situation calls _____ immediate action.

A．for　　B．on　　C．at　　D．off

（　）10. _____ your help, I can manage to pass the driving test.

A．Because of　B．Owing to　　C．Due to　　D．Thanks to

（　）11. We drove _____ the direction of Beijing _____ a low speed because of the heavy traffic during the National Day.

A．to; at　　B．in; by　　C．in; at　　D．to; with

（　）12. _____ reaching his hometown, we were warmly welcomed by his parents and relatives.

A．At　　B．In　　C．On　　D．Of

（　）13. The pretty girl is known _____ the teenagers _____ a singer _____ her wonderful voice in a song.

A．in; as; with　　B．to; as; for

C．among; with; in　　D．by; for; because of

（　）14. Zhou Yang is _____ skiing. So she won the first pace in the match.

A．good at　　B．weak in　　C．tired of　　D．angry with

（　）15. So far we have done a lot to build a low-carbon economy, but it is _____ ideal. We have to still work harder.

A．next to　　B．far from　　C．out of　　D．due to

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“介词”高考真题。

（　）1. — Which do you like better?

— I prefer English _____ maths.（2001）

A．for　　B．of　　C．to　　D．from

（　）2. Wait here _____ a moment. The boss will be back _____ several minutes.（2001）

A．for; in　　B．in; with　　C．at; on　　D．with; for

（　）3. Ned has many clients, but he never seems to be satisfied _____ he has got.（2002）

A．that　　B．what　　C．with which　　D．with what

（　）4. He spent two hours driving ____ the busy streets yesterday morning.（2002）

A．over　　B．past　　C．through　　D．across

（　）5. _____ a cold morning, I opened the window and was glad to find that it was snowing outside.（2003）

A．By　　B．In　　C．At　　D．On

（　）6. Young people enjoy trying new ways _____ old ones.（2003）

A．in spite of　B．according to　C．instead of　D．because of

（　）7. I'd like to rent a house, modern, comfortable and _____ in a quiet neighborhood.（2004）

A．in all　　B．above all　　C．after all　　D．at all

（　）8. Don't put too much pressure on him. He is a child ____.（2005）

A．above all　B．after all　　C．in all　　D．at all

（　）9. _____ some spelling mistakes, this composition is well written.（2005）

A．Except　　B．Except for　　C．Besides　　D．But

（　）10. Excuse me _____ calling you so late.（2006）

A．with　　B．at　　C．for　　D．of

（　）11. Is the climate here similar _____ that in Beijing?　（2006）

A．with　　B．to　　C．for　　D．as

（　）12. The teacher divided the class into four groups and then asked each group to present their answers _____.（2006）

A．by turn　B．in turn　　C．in turns　　D．on turn

（　）13. The problem will be discussed _____ at tomorrow's meeting.（2006）

A．in detail　B．in depth　　C．at length　　D．All the above

（　）14. Suzhou is _____ the Oriental Venice.　（2006）

A．known for　B．known as　　C．famous for　　D．known to

（　）15. They've been living in France _____ 2000.（2007）

A．for　　B．in　　C．at　　D．since

（　）16. Let me show you _____ our campus.（2007）

A．in　　B．about　　C．around　　D．on

（　）17. He lay on the sofa _____.（2007）

A．with his closed eyes and his mouth open

B．with his eyes closed and his open mouth

C．with his closed eyes and his open mouth

D．with his eyes closed and his mouth open

（　）18. The girl led the old woman _____while crossing the street.（2007）

A．by the arm　B．in the arm　　C．by her arm　　D．in her arm

（　）19. I want to have a car _____ after graduation.（2008）

A．on my own　B．of my own　　C．with my own　　D．to my own

（　）20. The South China tiger, also known _____ the Chinese tiger, is native to southern China.（2009）

A．as　　B．for　　C．to　　D．by

（　）21. Traffic accidents ____ driving too fast are very common these days.（2010）

A．thanks to　　B．because　　C．because of　　D．due to

（　）22. Skating has increased in popularity among sports lovers, _____ some high school students.（2011）

A．including　　B．included　　C．include　　D．includes

（　）23. It's very stupid _____ you to laugh _____ your sister when she is in trouble.（2011）

A．of; to　　B．for; to　　C．for; at　　D．of; at

（　）24. The Dragon Boat Festival is celebrated _____ the fifth day of the fifth lunar month.（2011）

A．in　　B．at　　C．on　　D．to

（　）25. Generally speaking, I prefer mineral water _____ tea.（2012）

A．to　　B．for　　C．with　　D．from

（　）26. Washington, a state in the USA, was named _____ one of the greatest American presidents.（2013）

A．instead of　　B．in honor of　　C．in favor of　　D．in charge of

（　）27. Daniel, it's good for you to read some books _____ India before you start your trip there.（2013）

A．in　　B．on　　C．for　　D．at

五、冠词

要求　掌握不定冠词、定冠词及零冠词的用法。

讲解

1. 不定冠词 a，an

（1）an 用在元音音素前，a 用在辅音音素前。

an honest boy，an X-ray，an 800-meter-long race，a university，a useful book

★ There is an "o" and "a" in the word "today".

（2）用于单数可数名词前表示一类人或物。

★ A tiger is a ferocious animal. 老虎是凶猛的动物。（指任何一只都如此）

（3）表示任一、某一、相同等，相当于 any，one，every，a certain，the same 等。

★ A Mr. Smith will visit our school this afternoon. 一个叫史密斯的先生今天下午将会参观我们学校。

★ They are of an age. 他们年龄相同。

（4）用在具体化了的抽象名词或物质名词前，表示"一场、一种、一类……"等。

★ I was caught in a heavy rain on my way home. 我回家路上淋了一场大雨。
★ Work hard, and you will be a success. 努力工作，你会成为一名成功人士。

（5）用于序数词前表示“再一，又一”。

★ I want to try a second time.
★ Can I ask you a third question?

（6）与形容词最高级连用表示“很，非常”。

★ Unit One is a most difficult unit. 第一单元是很难的一个单元。
区别：Unit One is the most difficult unit in Book Five.

（7）固定词组：

have a rest, have a good time, live a simple life, have a walk, in a word, have a cold, for a while, for a moment, just a minute, just a moment, three times a day, ……

2. 定冠词 the

（1）特指，用于上文提过的人或物，或者已经知道或熟悉的人或物。

★ I like your dress. The dress is so beautiful.

（2）用在单数可数名词前表示类别。

★ The tiger is in danger of dying out. 老虎面临灭绝的危险。（强调整体性）

（3）用于形容词前表示一类人，复数。表示一类物（不可数），单数。

the old 老人，the young 年轻人，the wounded 伤员，the sick 病人，the poor 穷人，the rich 富人，the dead 死人，……

★ 区别：the ole man 这个老人，the poor boy 这个可怜的男孩，单数。

（4）“the + 姓氏的复数”表示“某某一家人”或“某某夫妇”。

★ The Greens are watching TV now.

（5）“the + 比较级”指“两者中比较……的一个”；“the + 比较级…，the + 比较级…”，表示“越……越……”

★ Tom is the taller of the two boys. = Of the two boys, Tom is the taller.
★ The more time you spend on English, the greater progress you will make.

（6）特指世界上独一无二的事物，或方位名词前用 the，如 the sun，the moon，the earth，the east，the south。但当它们前面有修饰语时，则要用不定冠词。

★ The sun is shining in the sky.
★ There is a golden sun shining in the sky.
★ We will see a full moon tomorrow evening.

（7）用于年代或朝代前：in the 1990s / 1990's，the Tang Dynasty。
（8）用在单位名词前：by the hour 按小时计算；by the pound 按磅计算。
（9）用在乐器前：play the piano / the violin，……；但中国传统乐器除外：play erhu 拉

二胡。

（10）用于身体部位的名词前。

catch the thief by the arm，hold the boy by the hand，hit him on the head，slap her in the face，pat him on the shoulder，……

（11）用于由普通名词构成的专有名词前：the Great Wall，the People's Republic of China。

（12）用于固定词组。

in the end，go to the cinema，to tell the truth，in the distance，……

3. 零冠词

（1）表示类别。Tigers are ferocious animals. = A tiger is a ferocious animal.

（2）用在季节、月份、星期、三餐、球类、棋类和节假日（中国传统节日除外）前，如：have supper。但当它们前面有修饰词时要用 a，如：a rainy day，a cold winter，a wonderful dinner，a big supper。

（3）专有名词、物质名词、抽象名词前不用冠词。China，water，advice，……

（4）头衔、职位作表语、同位语和补足语时不用冠词。

monitor of our class，president of the USA，chairman of the country，……

（5）表示交通方式或通信手段。by bike，by bus，by air，by boat，by car，by ship，by plane，on foot，by e-mail，by fax，by telephone，……

（6）“零冠词 + 单数名词 + as / though + 主语 + 谓语”表示“尽管……”

★ Child as he is, he has been to many scenic spots alone.

（7）在 school，hospital，church，bed 等前不用冠词表示去这些地方做的具体事情。

go to school 上学　（比较：go to the school 去学校）
in hospital 住院　（比较：in the hospital 在医院）
go to church 去做礼拜　（比较：go to the church 去教堂）

（8）固定搭配。

in danger	in public	in place of	take the place of
by mistake	on sale	for sale	in charge of
in the charge of	lead to	as a result of	result in
result from	get on well with	keep in touch with	be tired of
be bored with	be sick of	devote…to…	be aware of
on fire	free of charge	rob sb. of	turn to sb. for help
in case of	in all	after all	above all
first of all	in spite of	according to	in detail
turn on	turn off	turn down	adapt…to…
be stuck in，……			

介词的固定词组需要靠同学们平时积累，做个有心人。

4. 冠词的位置

冠词一般放在名词之前，但是注意下列情况：

（1）冠词放在 quite，many，such，what 等之后。such a heavy box

（2）all，both 放在 the 之前。all the girls

（3）so / as / too / how + 形容词 + a / an + 单数名词。

★ He is so clever a boy.

★ How clever a boy he is!

样题

样题 1. ____ Shanghai is one of ____ most beautiful cities in ____ world.

A．The; a; a　　B．/ ; / ; /　　C．/ ; the; the　　D．The; a; /

【分析】选择 C。Shanghai 专有名词，前面不用冠词。the most beautiful 形容词最高级前有定冠词。in the world 在世界上，指独一无二的事物用定冠词。

样题 2. I like ____ music. I am listening to ____ music of the film.

A．/ ; /　　B．/ ; the　　C．the; the　　D．the; /

【分析】选择 B。第一格 music 泛指音乐。第二格 the music 特指这个电影里的音乐。

练习一

（　）1. Mary is _____ 8-year-old girl who has _____ gift for singing.

A．a; a　　B．an; the　　C．an; a　　D．the; a

（　）2. It is _____ long journey to Beijing by ____train, so you should make sure you get ___ fast one.

A．a; the; the　　B．a; / ; a　　C．/ ; the; a　　D．an; / ; a

（　）3. Tom is _____ university student and his friend Tony is _____ European.

A．an; a　　B．an; an　　C．a; /　　D．a; a

（　）4. Many girls are fond of playing ____ piano, while many boys are crazy about playing ____ chess.

A．/ ; the　　B．the; /　　C．a; /　　D．/ ; a

（　）5. If we can create ____ less polluted world, we can get _____ bluer sky.

A．a; a　　B．a; the　　C．the; a　　D．the; the

（　）6. _____ boy ran out so fast that he knocked into Mr. Wang in _____ stomach.

A．A; /　　B．A; the　　C．The; the　　D．The; /

（　）7. — How about _____ birthday evening party?

— It proved to be _____ success.

A．the; /　　B．a; /　　C．a; the　　D．the; a

（　）8. You can try _____ second time as long as you are not tired without ____ break.

A．a; the　　B．the; a　　C．the; a　　D．a; a

（　）9. In many western countries, _____ bicycle is _____ popular means of transportation.

A．the; the　　B．the; a　　C．a; /　　D．a; the

（　）10. The West Lake is _____ most beautiful place, which is worthy _____ .

A．a; visiting　　B．the; visiting

C．the; to be visited　　D．a; of being visited

（　）11. It is generally accepted that _____ boy must learn to stand up and fight like ____ man.

A．a; a　　B．a; the　　C．the; the　　D．a; /

（　）12. He missed ____ gold in the high jump, but will get _____ second chance in the long jump.

A．the; the　　B．/ ; a　　C．the; a　　D．a; /

（　）13. Lily is always shy in _____ public and she never dares to make a speech to ___ public.

A．the; the　　B．/ ; /　　C．/ ; the　　D．the; /

（　）14. ____ apple fell from the tree and hit him on _____ head.

A．An; the　　B．The; the　　C．An; /　　D．The; /

（　）15. What ____ fun it is to walk alone with _____ full moon hanging in the sky.

A．/ ; a　　B．a; /　　C．the; /　　D．a; the

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“冠词”高考真题。

（　）1. We have special food for _____ aged and _____ sick in our restaurant.（2002）

A．/ ; the　　B．the; /　　C．the; the　　D．an; a

（　）2. — Have you got _____E-mail address?

— Oh, yes, _____ is NJ2003@hotmail.com.（2003）

A．a; my　　B．a; it　　C．an; mine　　D．/ ; it

（　）3. There is _____ saying that _____ practice makes perfect.（2004）

A．a; the　　B．the; a　　C．a; /　　D．the; /

（　）4. _____ recent report stated that the number of Spanish speakers in the U.S. would be higher than the number of English speakers by _____ year 2090.（2005）

A．A; the　　B．A; /　　C．The; /　　D．The; a

（　）5. Many_____ bees are dancing merrily in _____ sky.（2006）

A．the; /　　B．/ ; the　　C．/ ; a　　D．a ; /

（　）6. We have no classes in _____ afternoon on _____ Saturdays.（2007）

A．the; /　　B．the ;the　　C．the ;a　　D．an; the

（　）7. Let’s go to ____ cinema to take your mind off the problems for ____ while.（2010）

A．the; the　　B．the; a　　C．a; the　　D．a; a

（　）8. Copenhagen is _____ capital of Denmark, which is in _____ Europe.（2011）

A．the; the　　B．the; /　　C．/ ; an　　D．a; /

（　）9. — What about _____ book?

— It’s too difficult _____ book for beginners.（2012）

A．a; the　　B．a; a　　C．the; the　　D．the; a

（　）10. — What's your plan for the coming May Day?

— I have no idea now. I'm too busy to take _____ holiday at _____ present.（2013）

A．a; the　　B．a; /　　C．the; the　　D．/ ; a

六、形容词和副词

要求 掌握形容词、副词的基本用法及比较级、最高级的用法。

讲解

1. 形容词

（1）形容词作定语一般放在被修饰词前，但形容词短语作定语及形容词修饰不定代词时往往放在被修饰词后。

如：something different，nothing impossible，food rich in fat

多个形容词作定语时的顺序为：

描绘词（beautiful / strong）— 大小（large / small）/ 长短（long / short）/ 高低（high / low）— 形状 / 新旧（new / old）— 颜色（green / red）— 国籍（Chinese）— 材料性质（wooden）— 类别 / 用途（reading）— 名词，可以巧记为："美小圆旧黄，法国木书房"或"美丽的大长新爱上了颜国材"。

如：

those three beautiful large wooden houses

the old Chinese stone bridge

（2）形容词作状语，表示主语的状态、性质、特征等。

★ He reached home, tired and hungry.

★ Surprised, the old lady found a little dog lying under her table.

（3）有些形容词只能作表语，被称为表语形容词，如以 a 开头的 afraid，alike，alive，alone，asleep，ashamed，aware，awake 等和表示健康的 well，ill，fine，poor 等。

（4）"the + 形容词"表示类别或整体。泛指一类人时，谓语动词用复数，如 the rich，the poor，the young 等；如果指抽象事物，单数处理。（请参考定冠词讲解）

★ The old are respected in our society.

★ The beautiful is loved by everyone.

（5）以-ly 结尾的形容词：friendly，deadly，lovely，lonely，likely，lively，ugly，brotherly 等。既可以是形容词又可以是副词的如：daily，weekly，monthly，yearly，early 等。

（6）enough 修饰名词时，可在名词前也可在名词后。如：enough food = food enough。

2. 副词

副词主要修饰动词、形容词、副词或其他结构。副词的位置如下。

（1）频率副词 often，always，never，seldom 等常放在行为动词之前，情态动词、系动词、助动词之后。

★ Jenny often comes to school early, but she always leaves late.
★ You must never play football in the street.

（2）enough 修饰形容词、副词时，要置于被修饰词之后。

★ The boy is old enough to go to school.
★ He ran fast enough to win the first place.

（3）修饰全句，置于句首。

★ Surprisingly, Tom was the first to arrive at the school.
★ Maybe they can help us.

（4）两种形式的副词。

hard 努力地 hardly 几乎不	near 在…… nearly 将近	late 迟的，晚的 lately 最近
close 近的 closely 仔细地	deep 深的 deeply 深深地	wide 宽的 widely 广泛地
high 高的 highly 高度地	free 免费的，空闲的 freely 自由地	

★ He is sitting close to me. / Watch him closely.
★ You have come too late. / What have you been doing lately?
★ The plane was flying high. / I think highly of your opinion.
★ He opened the door wide. / English is widely used in the world.
★ You can eat free in my restaurant. / You may speak freely, say what you like.

3. 形容词、副词的比较级和最高级

（1）构成：单音节词一般以-er，-est 结尾：harder，hardest；nicer，nicest；fatter，fattest；happier，happiest；……多音节词常加 more / most：more necessary，most necessary；……

特例：
often – more often / oftener – most often / oftenest
clever – more clever / cleverer – most clever / cleverest
strict – more strict / stricter – most strict / strictest
old – older / elder – oldest / eldest（elder，eldest 指兄弟姐妹间的长幼关系，常作定语）
far – farther / further – farthest / furthest（farther 指实际距离，further 指程度“进一步”）

★ My elder sister is two years older than me.
★ I can’t go any farther.
★ He went abroad for further study.

（2）原级：“as + 原级 + as”，“not so / as + 原级 + as”

★ I didn’t go to school as / so early as you.
★ I bought as many books as you did yesterday.
★ He has as beautiful a bike as you.

（3）比较级

① 降级比较：“ less + 原级 + than … ”，“ 不如…… ”。

★ He is less tall than his brother. = He is not so / as tall as his brother.

②“ 比较级 + and + 比较级 ”，“ 越来越…… ”。

★ The weather is becoming colder and colder.

③“ the + 比较级…，the + 比较级… ”，“ 越……，就越…… ”。

★ The harder you work, the greater progress you'll make.

④“ the + 比较级 + of the two ”表示“ 两者中较……的一个 ”。

★ He is the taller of the two boys.

⑤“ more + 原级（A）+ than + 原级（B） ”，“ 与其说是 B，不如说是 A ”。

★ She is more shy than cold. 与其说她冷漠，不如说她害羞。

⑥ no more than = only “ 仅仅，只有 ”；not more than = at most “ 至多，不超过 ”。

★ It was reported that there are no more than 30 tigers left in South China.

★ I spent not more than 50 yuan on this coat.

⑦ 倍数：请参考数词讲解。

⑧ 形容词比较级前可用 much，far，still，even，a lot，a little，a bit，any，a good deal 等修饰。any 常用在疑问句和否定句中。

★ — Are you feeling any better today?

— Yes, I feel much better today.

★ You are by far the best man I have known.

在比较中，如果比较对象属于同一范围需要将自身排除。

★ China is larger than any other country / all other countries in Asia.

★ China is larger than any country / all the countries in Africa.

（4）最高级：结构为“ the + 最高级 +（名词）+ 范围 ”

★ He is the tallest boy in our class. = He is taller than any other boy in our class.

样题

样题 1. When a piece of ice is heated, it becomes _____ until it disappears completely.

A．small　　B．smaller and smaller

C．the smallest　　D．smallest and smallest

【分析】选择 B。smaller and smaller 越来越小，考查比较级的用法。

样题 2. It was raining heavily. Little Mary felt cold, so she stood _____ to her mother.

A．close　　B．closely　　C．closed　　D．closing

【分析】选择 A。close to sb. 靠近某人，close 是形容词。

练习一

（　）1. He speaks English well indeed, but of course not _____ a native speaker.
A．as fluent as　　B．more fluent than
C．so fluently as　　D．much fluently than

（　）2. John Smith, a successful businessman, has a _____ car .
A．large German white　　B．large white German
C．white large German　　D．German large white

（　）3. Instead of scolding me, our teacher looked _____ at me and said nothing.
A．kind　　B．friendly　　C．kindly　　D．sad

（　）4. The greater the difficulties, _____ your reward will be.
A．richer　　B．richest　　C．the richer　　D．the rich

（　）5. Tom plays tennis very badly. Carl plays even _____ .
A．badlier　　B．more badly　　C．worse　　D．worsely

（　）6. The boys are playing _____ outdoors. They all look _____ .
A．happy; happily　　B．happily; happy
C．happy; happy　　D．happily; happily

（　）7. “Did you find ___ here last night ?” asked the police .
A．unusual something　　B．something unusual
C．unusual anything　　D．anything unusual

（　）8. _____ does a lot of good to your health.
A．Keep regular hours　　B．Keeping regularly hours
C．Keep regularly hours　　D．Keeping regular hours

（　）9. Americans eat _____ as they actually need everyday .
A．twice as much protein　　B．twice protein as much
C．twice protein as　　D．protein as twice much

（　）10. The population of Nanjing is _____ than that of Beijing.
A．much more　B．far larger　　C．less larger　　D．many more

（　）11. He jumped ____ and the other students spoke _____ of him.
A．high; high　　B．highly; highly
C．highly; high　　D．high; highly

（　）12. The pianos in the other shop will be _____, but _____ .
A．cheaper; not as better　　B．more cheap; not as better
C．cheaper; not as good　　D．more cheap; not as good

（　）13. The prices of the computers now are ____ than those seven years ago.
A．much more expensive　　B．far cheaper
C．even higher　　D．a little more lower

（　）14. All the people _____ at the meeting were his friends.
A．interested　B．present　　C．important　　D．attend

（　）15. — The film is worth seeing a second time.
— I can't agree more. It's _____ than the films I have ever seen.
A. far more interesting　　B. much less interesting
C. no more interesting　　D. any less interesting

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“形容词和副词”高考真题。

（　）1. “_____ do you write to your parents?” “Once a week.”（2001）
A. How long　B. How soon　C. How often　D. When

（　）2. Who runs _____ in your class?（2001）
A. fast　B. faster　C. fastest　D. most fast

（　）3. Are the children there _____? Don't you stay with them?（2001）
A. along　B. alone　C. himself　D. one

（　）4. The bus is _____ people and there is no room for him.（2001）
A. fill in　B. fill with　C. full of　D. full out

（　）5. — Why did you buy this kind of computer?
— This is _____ of the two.（2002）
A. a cheaper　B. the cheaper　C. cheaper　D. much cheaper

（　）6. — _____ will the bridge be finished?
— In a few months.（2003）
A. How soon　B. How long　C. How often　D. How far

（　）7. Mary is _____ than her younger sister.（2003）
A. less bright　　B. much more bright
C. less brighter　　D. much bright

（　）8. They have been _____ with each other for many years.（2003）
A. strangely　B. happily　C. friendly　D. familiarly

（　）9. — Which of these problems do you think is _____?
— The fifth is. I can't work it out.（2004）
A. easier　B. more difficult　C. the easiest　D. the most difficult

（　）10. — You don't look very _____, are you ill?
— No, I'm just a bit tired.（2004）
A. lovely　B. well　C. kind　D. strong

（　）11. There were two small rooms in the beach house, _____ served as a kitchen.（2005）
A. the smaller of them　　B. the smallest of that
C. the smaller of which　　D. smaller of which

（　）12. You see, Ted, your mother looks _____ better today.（2005）
A. a good deal　B. a good many　C. a great many　D. much more

（　）13. In all his life, Lei Feng always thought more of others _____.（2006）

A．than him　B．than of himself　C．as of him　D．as himself

（　）14. The boy in Class One works harder than _____ in Class Two.（2006）

A．any student　B．any other student

C．all other students　D．all the other students

（　）15. The pair of shoes I bought last week _____.（2006）

A．lasts good　B．lasts well　C．last better　D．last best

（　）16. Sports and physical training are _____ to one's body and mind.（2006）

A．of very valuable　B．of very value

C．great valuable　D．very valuable

（　）17. — "___ the blue bus come here?"

— "Every twenty minutes."（2007）

A．How fast has　B．How soon will

C．How long is　D．How often does

（　）18. The old lady was _____ to the young man who helped her find her lost grandson.（2007）

A．touched　B．grateful　C．cheerful　D．generous

（　）19. My new glasses cost me _____ the last pair that I bought.（2007）

A．three times than　B．three times as much as

C．three times as many as　D．as three times much as

（　）20. His _____ classmate was head of a large department store.（2007）

A．formal　B．former　C．original　D．formerly

（　）21. Sally is _____ shy to speak in public.（2007）

A．too much　B．so much　C．much too　D．very so

（　）22. The type of clothing we wear _____ the weather.（2007）

A．depend on largely　B．depend largely on

C．depends largely on　D．depends on largely

（　）23. — How about taking a walk?

— Oh, I think it is _____ cold for a walk.（2008）

A．very much　B．too much

C．much too　D．so much

（　）24. This magazine is _____ worth reading.（2008）

A．well　B．good　C．bad　D．great

（　）25. The factory has produced _____cars this year as the year of 1998.（2008）

A．as twice many　B．as many twice

C．twice as many　D．twice many as

（　）26. How _____ it is for him to see the great scientist.（2008）

A．friendly　B．luck　C．fortunate　D．favorite

（　）27. The new flat is four times ____ the old one.（2009）

A．bigger than　B．the size　C．as bigger as　D．the same as

（　）28. — It is useless trying to help Jack with his math. He is so poor at it.

— I know, but is he _____ better at it now?（2009）

A．much　B．any　C．even　D．little

（　）29. Of the two sisters, Betty is ____ one.（2010）

A．the youngest　B．a youngest

C．the younger　D．a younger

（　）30. My uncle's house in the downtown area is much smaller than ours; but it is twice ____ expensive.（2010）

A．as　B．so　C．too　D．very

（　）31. — Harry treats his secretary badly.

— Yes. He seems to think that she is the _____ important person in the office.（2011）

A．little　B．least　C．less　D．most

（ ）32. — Don't you think it a good idea to have a picnic tomorrow morning?

— Yes, _____! I can't wait to go.（2012）

A．relatively　B．eventually　C．approximately　D．absolutely

（ ）33. — What do you think of Zhang Liangying's English songs?（2012）

— Wonderful. Almost no other Super Girls can sing _____, I think.

A．well　B．best　C．good　D．better

（　）34. Do you think shopping online will _____ take the place of shopping in stores?（2013）

A．specially　B．finally　C．regularly　D．merely

（　）35. People worry _____ about the bird flu in spring than the other seasons of the year.（2013）

A．much　B．most　C．more　D．many

（　）36. The more effort you put into your studies, _____.（2015）

A. the better will be your result　B. the better your result will be

C. your result will be better　D. will be better your result.

小词法综合练习

（　）1. For further _____, please the number below.

A．information　B．message　C．news　D．knowledge

（　）2. — Could you tell me where the nearest hospital?

— The nearest hospital? It's on _____ side of the street.

A．the other　B．each　C．another　D．both

（　）3. I am less _____ than the three girls standing over there.

A．tall　　B．taller　　C．the taller　　D．the tallest

（　）4. We've missed the last bus. I'm afraid we have no _____ but to take a taxi

A．way　　B．choice　　C．possibility　　D．selection

（　）5. There must be _____ with the air conditioner.

A．something wrong seriously　　B．something seriously wrong

C．something serious wrong　　D．something wrong serious

（　）6. In ancient times, people rarely traveled long distances and most farmers only traveled _____ the local market.

A．longer than　　B．more than

C．as much as　　D．as far as

（　）7. — There's coffee and tea; you can have _____.

— Thanks.

A．either　　B．each　　C．one　　D．it

（　）8. My ____ sister who works in the bank is two years ____ than I.

A．young; older　B．elder; older　　C．eld; elder　　D．old; older

（　）9. — Is this iPad _____？

— No. It belongs to _____.

A．yours; me　　B．yours; his　　C．her; him　　D．yours; her

（　）10. — You are so lucky.

— What do you mean _____ saying that?

A．for　　B．in　　C．of　　D．by

（　）11. Marry arrived _____ the small village _____ a snowy night.

A．at; on　　B．at; in　　C．in; at　　D．in; on

（　）12. I am sure David will be able to find the library — he has a pretty good _____ of direction.

A．idea　　B．feeling　　C．experience　　D．sense

（　）13. There's _____ cooking oil left in the house. Would you go to the corner store and get _____?

A．little; some　　B．little; any

C．a little; some　　D．a little; any

（　）14. I didn't tell him _____ news at once because I wanted to give him ____ surprise.

A．a; a　　B．the; the　　C．the; a　　D．/ ; the

（　）15. — What do you think of what Tom did in class?

— What he did was _____ my imagination.

A．through　　B．above　　C．beyond　　D．over

（　）16. They produced _____ TV sets this year as they did last year..

A．more than twice　　B．as twice as many

C．twice as many as　　D．more than twice as many

（　）17. The book tells ____ life story of John Smith, who left _____ school and worked

for a newspaper at ____ age of 16.

A．the; the; the　　B．a; the; the

C．the; / ; the　　D．a; / ; an

（　）18. It may not be a great suggestion. But before ____ is put forward, we'll have to do with it.

A．a good one　　B．a better one

C．the best one　　D．a best one

（　）19. ____ of the land in that district _____ covered with trees and grass.

A．Two fifth; is　　B．Two fifth; are

C．Two fifths; is　　D．Two fifths; are

（）20. Mrs. Taylor has _____ 8-year-old daughter who has _____ gift for painting — she has won two national prizes.

A．a; a　　B．an; the　　C．an; a　　D．the; a

小句法

一、陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句

要求 掌握陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句的基本结构，尤其是感叹句和反意疑问句。

讲解

1. 陈述句：用来叙述一个事实或观点。如：Light travels faster than sound.

2. 疑问句：用来提出问题。分为一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、反意疑问句和选择疑问句。

① 一般疑问句：Can you finish the work in time?

② 特殊疑问句：Where do you live?

③ 选择疑问句：Do you want tea or coffee? / Which is bigger, Beijing or New York？

④ 反意疑问句：It's very hot today, isn't it? / He doesn't know her, does he?

反意疑问句疑问部分的构成：

（1）当陈述部分的主语是 everybody，everyone，no one，nobody，somebody 等时，附加部分的主语在正式语体中通常用 he，在非正式文体中则用 they。

★ Nobody likes to lose money, does he?

★ Everyone knows how to do it, don't they?

（2）当陈述部分的主语是 everything，something，nothing 等时，附加疑问部分的主语只能用 it。

★ Nothing is difficult, is it?

（3）当陈述部分含 seldom，hardly，scarcely，no，not，never，rarely，few，little，nothing，nobody，nowhere 等否定词或半否定词，附加部分用肯定形式。

★ He hardly plays football after school, does he?

（4）当陈述部分含有 un-，in-，im-，dis-等否定前缀或-less 等否定后缀构成的派生词时，附加部分用否定形式。

★ It's unfair, isn't it?
★ She dislikes it, doesn't she?

（5）祈使句后一般加上 will you 或 won't you 构成反意疑问句，用 will you 多表示"请求"，用 won't you 多表示提醒对方注意。

★ Don't open the door, will you?
★ Try to be back by two, won't you?
Let's ...，+ shall we?
Let us ...，+ will / won't you?
Let + 第三人称 ...，will you?
★ Let's go to the cinema tonight, shall we?
★ Let us / him go to the cinema tonight, will you?

（6）当陈述部分含有情态动词 used to 或 ought to 时，疑问部分分别用 usedn't / didn't 和 oughtn't / shouldn't。

★ The old man used to smoke, didn't he / usedn't he?
★ He ought to know the answer, oughtn't he?

（7）当陈述部分为主从复合句时，疑问部分一般与主句的主语和谓语动词保持对应关系。但当陈述部分的主语是 I，谓语是 think，believe，suppose，expect 这类动词时，疑问部分往往与从句中的主语和谓语动词保持对应关系，而且要注意否定的转移。

★ She says that I did it, doesn't she?
★ I suppose that he's serious, isn't he?
★ I don't think she cares, does she?

（8）当陈述部分含有情态动词 must 时。如果 must 表示推测"一定是；必定"时，反意疑问句则需根据 must 后的动词选相应的形式。

★ You must have made a mistake, haven't you?
★ He must be in the library, isn't he?
★ They must have seen the film last week, didn't they?

3. 祈使句：表命令、警告、提醒、建议、请求、叮嘱、号召等，谓语动词用原形，否定句用 Don't do…。

★ Sit down, please. / Don't be nervous!
★ Do be careful!（Do 加强语气）务必小心！

句型：祈使句 + and / or + 简单句（通常用一般将来时）。

★ Study hard, and you'll make rapid progress.
★ Hurry up, or you will be late for school.

4. 感叹句：用来表示说话人喜怒哀乐、惊讶、赞美等强烈感情的句子。

（1）what 引导的感叹句。

① What + a / an +形容词＋可数名词单数＋主语＋谓语！

★ What a clever girl she is!

② What +形容词 + 可数名词复数 + 主语 + 谓语！

★ What beautiful flowers they are!

③ What + 形容词 + 不可数名词 + 主语 + 谓语！

★ What fine weather it is today!

（2）how 引导的感叹句。

① How + 形容词 / 副词 + 主语 + 谓语！

★ How careful she is!

★ How fast he runs!

② How + 形容词 + a / an + 可数名词单数 + 主语 + 谓语！

★ How beautiful a girl she is!

③ How + 主语 + 谓语！

★ How time flies!

（3）表达愿望。

★ May you succeed! 祝你成功！

样题

样题 1. ____ it is today! Let's go shopping.

A. What a fine weather　　B. How fine a weather

C. How fine weather　　D. What fine weather

【分析】选择 D。weather 是不可数名词，fine weather 中心词是 weather，所以用 what 类型的感叹句。本句可转换为 How fine the weather is today!

样题 2. _____ advice you have given us !

A. What a useful　　B. How useful

C. What an useful piece of　　D. How useful the piece of

【分析】选择 D。How 修饰形容词 useful。句型是“How + 形容词 + 主语 + 谓语！”you have given us 是定语从句，修饰 advice。

练习一

（　）1. _____ on the television or _____ a magazine, and then you will often see a lot of advertisements.

A. Turning; open　　B. Turn; opening

C．Turn; open　　D．Turning; opening

（　）2. The class must have been discussing how to make full use of their spare time recently, _____?

A．mustn't it　B．hasn't it　C．aren't they　D．haven't they

（　）3. He dislikes the two subjects, _____ he?

A．does　B．doesn't　C．is　D．isn't

（　）4. I don't think that the necklace is made of diamond, _____?

A．do I　B. do you　C．isn't it　D．is it

（　）5. You've just finished your listening exam. Please get yourself ready for the next part, _____ ?

A．shall we　B．will you　C．do you　D．are you

（　）6. Let's take action together to make our city more beautiful, _____?

A．won't we　B．don't we　C．shall we　D．won't you

（　）7. Zhang Lili hardly had time to think of herself before she saved her students, _____ ?

A．didn't she　B．hadn't she　C．did she　D．does she

（　）8. — He didn't go to the concert yesterday, did he?

— _____. He was busy studying for the tests all day.

A．No, he didn't　B．Yes, he did

C．No, he did　D．Yes, he didn't

（　）9. ____ bright girls they are!

A．What　B．What a　C．How　D．How a

（　）10. _____ it is to drink something cold on such a hot day!

A．What a fun　B．What funny

C．What fun　D．How a fun

（　）11. _____ role she played in the film! No wonder she has won an Oscar.

A．How interesting　B．How an interesting

C．What interesting　D．What an interesting

（　）12. ____ hard time he had finding a good job!

A．What　B．What a　D．How　D. How a

（　）13. Don't be discouraged. ____ things easy and you will enjoy every day of you life.

A．Taking　B．To take　C．Take　D. Taken

（　）14. ____ down the radio — the baby's asleep in the next room.

A．Turning　B．To turn　C．Turned　D．Turn

（　）15. He disagreed with what you said, _____?

A．did he　B．didn't he　C．did you　D．didn't you

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的高考真题。

（　）1. _____ weather we have! We can go outing today.（2001）

A．What a beautiful　　B．What beautiful

C．How a beautiful　　D．How beautiful

（　）2. Your brother joined the PLA last year, _____?（2001）

A．didn't you　B．didn't he　C．did you　D．did he

（　）3. Oh, John! _____ you drive a car!（2002）

A．What dangerous　　B．What dangerously

C．How dangerous　　D．how dangerously

（　）4. Ask them not to talk in class,_____?（2003）

A．are you　B．will you　C．do you　D．don't you

（　）5. _____ good memory you have for English learning!（2004）

A．What a　B．What　C．How　D．How a

（　）6. _____ beautiful painting this is!（2005）

A．How　B．What　C．What a　D．How a

（　）7. He must be in the classroom, _____he?（2006）

A．mustn't　B．can't　C．isn't　D．doesn't

（　）8. How nice _____!（2006）

A．of you to invite me　　B．for you to invite me

C．of you and invite me　　D．of you who invite me

（　）9. Tell her what is happening here, _____ ?（2007）

A．can you　B．shall you　C．will you　D．don't you

（　）10. _____ funny-looking clothes the old man is wearing!（2007）

A．What a　B．How a　C．What　D．How

（　）11. ____ strange shoes Tom is wearing!（2009）

A．How　B．What a　C．What　D．How a

（　）12. ____ to have a talk with those humorous workers!（2010）

A．What a fun it is　　B．What fun is it

C．What fun it is　　D．What a fun is it

（　）13. Be sure to call me when you come here next time, ____?（2010）

A．will you　B．won't you　C．can you　D．can't you

（　）14. The selfish man never offers help to his friends, _____?（2011）

A．is he　B．isn't he　C．does he　D．doesn't he

（　）15. _____ ! Let's go out for a walk in the garden.（2011）

A．What a fine day　　B．What fine day

C．How fine day　　D．How a fine day

（　）16. _____ good time we had at the dinner party! The host was really friendly.（2012）

A．What　B．How　C．What a　D．How a

（　）17. _____ the new year bring you health, happiness and good luck.（2012）

A．May　　B．Could　　C．Can　　D．Might

（　）18. _____ role she played in the movie! No wonder she has won the Oscar for best actress.（2013）

A．What a fascinating　　B．What fascinating

C．How a fascinating　　D．How fascinating

（　）19. Look, Vivian is sleepy. She must have stayed up late last night, _____?（2013）

A．mustn't she　　B．haven't she

C．didn't she　　D．hasn't she

（　）20. Henry seldom came here to help us, _____? （2015）

A．didn't he　　B．doesn't he　　C．does he　　D．did he

二、简单句句子成分与基本句型

要求 掌握简单句的七种成分和五种基本句型。这对于理解句子结构、分析句子成分很有帮助，尤其是对理解复合句、并列句是不可或缺的基本功。

讲解

1. 简单句句子成分

（1）主语：主语是谓语讲述的对象，一般在句首。不定式作主语时，常用形式主语 it。

★ To teach them English is my job.→It is my job to teach them English.

（2）谓语：说明主语“做什么”、“是什么”或者“怎么样”。谓语必须用动词。

★ We study hard.

（3）表语：说明主语“是什么”或者“怎么样”，一般放在连系动词后。

★ He is ill. / Tom looks happy.

（4）宾语：表示动作、行为的对象，一般放在动语或介词后。

★ All of us like him. / We live in China.

有些动词后面需要跟双宾语，间接宾语指人，直接宾语指物。这类动词常见的有：give, buy, lend, pass, show, tell, sent, leave 等。

★ He bought me a book. = He bought a book for me.

（5）定语：用来修饰名词或代词。

★ The girl behind the tree is my sister.

（6）状语：用来修饰动词、形容词或副词。

① 时间状语：I often get up at 5:30 in the morning.

② 地点状语：You should put the book where it was. 你应该把这本书放回原来的地方。

③ 程度状语：I love you very much.

④ 目的状语：He took some change from his pocket to buy a newspaper.

She got up early so that she could catch the first bus.

⑤ 方式状语：Please do it as I told you. 请按我告诉你的去做。

⑥ 伴随状语：She came in with a dictionary in her hand.

⑦ 让步状语：No matter what happens, I will never lose heart.

⑧ 条件状语：If you don't work hard, you'll fall behind the others.

⑨ 结果状语：He was so tired that he fell asleep immediately.

（7）补语：常用的是宾语补足语，主要用来说明宾语的特征、状态或身份。

★ I found it very difficult to find work.

★ The boss kept them working all day.

2. 简单句的五种基本句型：

（1）主 + 谓（S+V）：

★ I study hard.

（2）主 + 谓 + 宾（S+V+O）：

★ He loves his wife.

（3）主 + 谓 + 表（S+V+P）：

★ The music sounds nice.

（4）主 + 谓 + 间宾 + 直宾（S+V+IO+DO）：

★ He brings me cookies every day.

（5）主 + 谓 + 宾语 + 宾补（S+V+O+C）：

★ He asked me to answer this question.

用 it 做形式宾语，常用句型： 主语 + 谓语 + it + 宾补 + 真正宾语。常用于此句型的动词有：think，believe，consider，suppose，find，feel，make 等。

★ I found it very pleasant to be with your family.

样题

样题 1. With a lot of homework _____, little Tom felt worried all the time.（2011）

A．did　　B．to do　　C．do　　D．doing

【分析】选择 B。不定式作宾补。意思为“有许多作业要做”。

样题 2. The play ____ next month will mainly reflect the local culture.（2010）

A．put on　　B．to be put on　　C．being put on　　D．having been put on

【分析】选择 B。不等式短语 to be put on next month 作定语修饰 the play，表示“下月将被上演的戏”。

练习

（　）1. When Mary returned several days later, she found that all plates still _____ where she

had _____ them.

A．lay; laid　　B．lied; laid　　C．lay; lain　　D．lied; lain

（　）2. Do remember to put such dangerous things as knives out of children's _____.

A．touch　　B．reach　　C．sight　　D．distance

（　）3. Our teacher looked very _____ today. Can you tell me why?

A．exciting　　B．excitedly　　C．excited　　D．excite

（　）4. Luckily, the electrical fire was _____ in time, but it was difficult for us to fall asleep again.

A．put on　　B. put off　　C．put out　　D．put away

（　）5. About _____ of the students in our class are able to describe that place in English.

A．two-third　　B. two-three　　C．two-threes　　D．two-thirds

（　）6. The number of the spelling mistakes in your composition _____ surprising.

A．being　　B．are　　C．be　　D．is

（　）7. The old photo on your desk _____ me of that Australian professor.

A．informed　　B．reminded　　C．mentioned　　D．memorized

（　）8. It is no use _____ with a man like him.

A．being argued　　B．argued

C．arguing　　D．argues

（　）9. The experiment turned out to be_____, which was unexpected.

A．a complete failure　　B．a completely failure

C．completed failure　　D．complete failed

（　）10. Martin Luther King _____ equality all his life.

A．worked with　　B．worked for

C．worked out　　D．worked on

三、直接引语与间接引语

直接引语（direct speech）：直接引述别人的原话。

间接引语（indirect speech）：用自己的话转述别人的话。

要求　直接引语变间接引语时，要掌握人称、时态、指示代词、时间状语、地点状语以及句型的变化规则。这一语法项目的考查可与“复合句”中的宾语从句结合起来学习。

讲解

1. 人称的变化

顺口溜“一随主，二随宾，第三人称不更新”。

（1）“一随主”是指如果从句中的主语是第一人称或被第一人称所修饰，从句中的人称要随主句中主语的人称变化。

★ She said, “My brother wants to go with me.” →She said her brother wanted to go with her.

（2）“二随宾”是指若从句中的主语及宾语是第二人称或被第二人称“你”所修饰，从句中的人称要跟引号外的主句宾语一致。如果引号外的主句没有宾语，也可用第一人称。

★ He said to Kate, “How is your sister now?” →He asked Kate how her sister was then.

（3）“第三人称不更新”是指如果从句中的主语及宾语是第三人称或被第三人称所修饰，从句中的人称一般不需要变化。

★ Mr. Smith said, “Jack is a good worker.” →Mr. Smith said Jack was a good worker.

2. 时态的变化

（1）主句的谓语动词是现在时或将来时，直接引语变为间接引语时，时态一律不变。

★ He says, “I finished the work.” →He says that he finished the work.

（2）主句的谓语动词是一般过去时，从句必须为过去时的某个时态。规则如下：

直接引语	间接引语
一般现在时	一般过去时
一般过去时	过去完成时
一般将来时	过去将来时
现在进行时	过去进行时
现在完成时	过去完成时
过去完成时	过去完成时（不变）
过去进行时	过去进行时（不变）

直接引语如果是客观真理、自然现象、名人名言或与一个具体的过去时间连用说明客观事实时，变为间接引语时时态不变。

★ The teacher said, “The earth is round.” →The teacher said that the earth is round.

★ He said, “I was born in Wuxi in 1965.” →He said that he was born in Wuxi in 1965.

3. 指示代词、时间状语和地点状语的相应变化

指示代词： this — that these — those

表示时间的词：now — then today — that day yesterday — the day before

this week — that week last week — the week before

three days ago — three days before

next week — the next（following）week

tomorrow — the next（following ）day

表地点的词： here — there

动词： bring — take come — go

例如：

★ She said, “I will come here this evening.”
→She said that she would go there that evening.

4. 句型

（1）直接引语如果是陈述句，间接引语应改为由 that 引导的宾语从句。

★ She said, “Our bus will arrive in five hours.”
→She said that their bus would arrive in five hours.

（2）直接引语如果是反意疑问句、选择疑问句或一般疑问句，间接引语应改为由 whether 或 if 引导的宾语从句。

★ He said, “Can you swim, John?” →He asked John if / whether he could swim.
★ “You have finished the homework, haven’t you?” my mother asked.
→ My mother asked me whether / if I had finished the homework.

（3）直接引语如果是特殊疑问句，间接引语应改为由疑问词引导的宾语从句，宾语从句必须用陈述句语序。

★ She asked me, “When do they have their dinner?”
→ She asked me when they had their dinner.

（4）直接引语如果是祈使句，间接引语应改为“ tell（ask，order，beg，request，……）sb.（not）to do ”。

★ “Don’t make any noise,” she said to the children.
→ She told（ordered）the children not to make any noise.
★ “Bring me a cup of tea, please,” said she.
→ She asked me to bring her a cup of tea.

（5）直接引语如果是感叹句，改为间接引语时，改成用 what 或 how 引导的宾语从句。也可改为 that 引导的从句。

★ He said to me, “What a beautiful park it is.”
→ He told me what a beautiful park it was.
或 He told me that the park was quite beautiful.

样题

样题 1. The doctor asked Edison _____.（2003）

A．what he put mirrors behind the lights for
B．why did he put mirrors behind the lights for
C．why he put mirrors behind the lights for
D．what did he put mirrors behind the lights for

【分析】选择 A。间接引语由疑问词引导的宾语从句必须用陈述句语序。why 相当于 for what。

样题 2. The teacher said that the sun _____ in the east and _____ down in the west.

A．rose; went　B．rose; goes　C．rises; went　D．rises; goes

【分析】选择 D。“太阳东升西落”是自然现象，用一般现在时，变为间接引语时时态不变。

练习

（　）1. “You’ve already got well, haven’t you ?”she asked.

→She asked _____.

A．if I have already got well, hadn’t you

B．whether I had already got well

C．have I already got well

D．had I already got well.

（　）2. He asked, “Are you a Party member or a League member?”

→He asked me _____.

A．am I a Party member or a League member

B．was I a Party member or a League member

C．whether I was a Party member or a League member

D．whether was I a Party member or a League member.

（　）3. He asked,“How are you getting along?”

→He asked _____.

A．how am I getting along　　B．how are you getting along

C．how I was getting along　　D．how was I getting along

（　）4. He asked me _____ with me.

A．what the matter is　　B．what the mater was

C．what’s the matter　　D．what was the matter

（　）5. He said,“Don’t do that again.”

→ He _____ me _____ that again.

A．said to; not to do　　B．said to; don’t do

C．told; don’t do　　D．told; not to do

（　）6. Can you make sure _____ ?

A．that he will come here today　　B．when he will come here today

C．will he come here today　　D．whether will he come here today

（　）7. I’d like to know _____ Chinese.

A．when he began to learn　　B．when did he begin to learn

C．when did he begin learning　　D．for how long he began to learn

（　）8. Chen Qiang told Mr. Smith that the People’s Republic of China _____on October 1,1949.

A．founded　　B．had been founded

C．found　　D．was founded

四、强调句

要求 掌握陈述句、疑问句的强调句型，以及句型 It is / was not until…that…。

讲解

1. 陈述句的强调句型：It is / was + 被强调部分 + that / who …

★ It was I that（who） saw a film in the Youth Palace last night.
★ It was in the Youth Palace that I saw a film last night.

判别强调句的方法：如果把“ It is / was... that / who... ”去掉，句子结构仍然完整，即为强调句型。

比较：

★ It was at 6:00 p.m. that he came home yesterday.（强调句）
It was 6:00 p.m. when he came home yesterday.（状语从句）

2. 疑问句的强调句型：Is / Was it + 被强调部分 + that / who …?

Wh- / How is / was it that…?

★ What is it that has made Peter successful?
★ Was it in the village（that / which）we used to live in that the accident happened?

3. It is / was not until + 时间状语（或从句）+ that …

★ It was not until 12 o’clock last night that my father came home.
区别：Not until 12 o’clock last night did my father come home.

4. 强调谓语

在谓语前加 do，does 或 did（意思是：的确，确实），谓语动词用原形；仅适用于祈使句、一般现在时和一般过去式的肯定句。

★ He does have lunch at school every day. 他确实每天在学校吃中饭。
★ Please do come! 请一定要来啊！
★ Tom did go to the cinema yesterday. 汤姆昨天的确去看电影了。

样题

样题 1. It was for this reason _____ he was late for the meeting this morning.
A．which　　B．why　　C．that　　D．how
【分析】选择 C。强调原因状语 for this reason.

样题 2. It was _____ he came back from Africa that year _____ he met the girl .
A．when; then　B．not; until　　C．not until; that　　D．only; when
【分析】选择 C。句型 It was not until + 时间状语从句 + that …。

练习一

（　）1. It was at midnight _____ I got back home yesterday.
A．when　　B．which　　C．that　　D．where
（　）2. It is I who _____ going to Beijing next week.
A．am　　B．is　　C．are　　D．will

（　）3. Was it ____ Tom's carelessness _____ your keys were all lost?

A．because; which　　B．for; what

C．because of; that　　D．since; /

（　）4. It was not _____ she took off her glasses _____ I realized she was a famous film star.

A．when; that　B．until; that　C．until, it　D．when; then

（　）5. _____ you met the Englishman?

A．Where it was that　　B．Who it was that

C．Where was it that　　D．Where was that

（　）6. Why! I have nothing to confess. _____ you want me to say?

A．What is it that　　B．What it is that

C．How is it that　　D．How it is that

（　）7. Was it in the lake _____ lies in front of the museum _____ she was saved by a solider?

A．which; where　　B．which; that

C．that; which　　D．where; what

（　）8. It was the fact _____ he failed the driving exam _____ surprised us.

A．that; that　B．which; that　C．what; which　D．why; which

（　）9. — Were all the people in the taxi injured in the accident?

— No, _____ only the two passengers who got hurt.

A．there was　B．there were　C．that was　D．it was

（　）10. It was not until dark _____ he found _____ he thought was the correct way to solve the problem.

A．that; what　　B．that; that

C．when; what　　D．when; that

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“强调句”高考真题。

（　）1. It was the way he asked _____ really worried me.（2001）

A．that　B．so　C．which　D．how

（　）2. It was only when he was punished by his parents _____ to make up his mind to work harder.（2006）

A．did he begin　B．who began　C．that began　D．that he began

（　）3. It was for Lily ____ David bought a new necklace last week.（2010）

A．who　B．whom　C．which　D．that

（　）4. It _____ from her parents _____ she borrowed the money.（2011）

A．was; that　B．were; that　C．was; who　D．were; who

（　）5. Was it in 1939 _____ the Second World War broke out?（2012）

A．when　　B. which　　C．that　　D．where

（　）6. I'm just curious about _____ that makes our teacher so angry.（2013）

A．What is it　B．how is it　　C．what it is　　D．how it is

五、倒装句

要求 掌握全部倒装和部分倒装的规则。

讲解

1. 全部倒装：即全部谓语位于主语之前

（1）There be / seem / appear / come / stand + 主语。（There be 具体为：There is / are / was / were, There is going to be, There will be, There used to be, There happened to be, There seems to be ……）

★ There stands a tree in front of the house.
★ There used to be a river near our school.
★ There is someone waiting for you at the gate.

（2）here / there / out / in / up / down 等副词位于句首或地点状语位于句首，且主语为名词（不是代词）、谓语为不及物动词时，句子须全部倒装。

★ At the foot of the hill is an old house, where we used to live.
★ Here comes the bus. （区别：Here it comes.）

2. 部分倒装：助动词 / 情态动词 / be + 主语 + 谓语动词

（1）否定词 little，seldom，hardly，never，no 等位于句首。

★ Seldom does he have lunch at school.
★ Never has he been to the Palace Museum before.

（2）句型：Hardly / Scarcely had sb. done… when… = No sooner had sb. done …than… 一……就……

★ No sooner had I got on the bus than it began to rain. 我一上车天就开始下雨了。
= Hardly had I got on the bus when it began to rain.

（3）Not only + 部分倒装 + but（also）+ 陈述句
Not until + 时间状语（从句）+ 部分倒装
Only + 副词 / 介词短语 / 状语从句 + 部分倒装

★ Not only does he like English, but he also likes maths.
★ Not until he came back did I go to bed.
★ Only in this way can you learn English well.
★ Only you can work out the math problem.（only + 主语，不倒装）

（4）so / neither / nor + 助动词 / 情态动词 / be 动词 + 主语，表示“也 / 也不”

★ He went to the cinema yesterday, so did I.
★ If you won't go, neither will I.（neither = nor; shall = will）
★ ① — Tom is a student and he likes playing basketball.
— So it is with me. 我也是。
★ ② — Tom likes playing basketball.
— So he does and so do you. 他的确喜欢，你也是。

（5）在 if 虚拟条件从句中，可将 were / had / should 提至句首，并将 if 省去。

★ Were I you, I would go to Tibet at once.
★ Had he arrived earlier yesterday, he would have met Mary.
★ Should it rain tomorrow, I would stay at home.

（6）as / though（尽管）引导让步状语从句句型：形容词 / 副词 / 不带冠词的名词 / 动词 + as / though +主语 + 谓语。

★ Child as / though he is, he knows much. 尽管他是个孩子，但他懂很多。
★ Hard as he tries, he always fails.
★ Busy as he is, he is happy.

样题

样题 1. _____ there yesterday, they wouldn't have quarreled with each other.

A. If I could have been　　B. If I were
C. Should I be　　D. Had I been

【分析】选择 D。本句为虚拟条件句，与过去事实相反，正常语序为 If I had been there yesterday, …

样题 2. Rarely _____ such a silly thing.

A. have I heard of　　B. I have heard of
C. I had heard of　　D. had I heard of

【分析】选择 A。否定词 rarely（很少）位于句首，句子部分倒装。

练习一

（　）1. John opened the door. There _____ he had never seen before.
A. a girl did stand　　B. a girl stood
C. did a girl stand　　D. stood a girl

（　）2. Only in this way _____ to make progress in English.
A. you can hope　　B. you did hope
C. can you hope　　D. did you hope

（　）3. Not only____ polluted but _____ crowded.
A. was the city; were the streets　　B. the city was; were the streets
C. was the city; the streets were　　D. the city was; the streets were

（　）4. At the foot of the mountain _____.

A．a village lie　B．lies a village　C．does a village lie　D．lying a village

（　）5. — It was carelessly of you to have left your clothes outside last night.
— My God! _____.
A．So I did　B．So did I　C．So were you　D．So did you

（　）6. I finally got the job I dreamed about. Never in all my life _____ so happy.
A．did I feel　B．I felt　C．I had felt　D．had I felt

（　）7. _____, I would set out at once.
A．Were I you　B．If I should be you
C．If I was you　D．If I had been you

（　）8. Hardly _____ out at night.
A．does she go　B．goes she　C．she goes　D．she has gone

（　）9. _____, she was already head of the workshop.
A．As she was young　B．She was as young
C．Young as she was　D．Young as she is

（　）10. _____ it rain, the crops would be saved.
A．Shall　B．Will　C．Should　D．Would

（　）11. He could hardly drive a car, _____.
A．so couldn't I B. couldn't I either　C．I couldn't, too　D．neither could I

（　）12. _____ snacks and drinks, but they also brought cards for entertainment when they had a picnic in the forest.
A．Not only they brought　B．Not only did they bring
C．Not only brought they　D．Not only they did bring

（　）13. Only when he reached the tea-house _____ it was the same place he'd been in last year.
A．he realize　B．he did realize　C．realized he　D．did he realize

（　）14. I'm a student and I like English very much, _____.
A．so is Li Hua　B．so does Li Hua
C．so it is with Li Hua　D．so it was the same with Li Hua

（　）15. — David has made great progress recently.
— _____, and _____.
A．So he has; so you have　B．So he has; so have you
C．So has he; so have you　D．So has he; so you have

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“倒装句”高考真题。

（　）1. Only when he was at home, _____have a little time to rest.（2001）
A．did he　B．he did　C．does he　D．he does

（　）2. — I want to know if your son will go to Ann's party.
— If your son does, _____.（2001）

A．so does she　　B．so he does
C．so will mine　　D．so mine will

（　）3. Into the bus _____.（2002）
A．came the big brown dog　　B．did the big brown dog come
C．the big brown dog came　　D．the big brown dog did come

（　）4. — What do you think of the film? Do you like it?
— I'm afraid not. And _____.（2002）
A．my brother, either　　B．neither is my brother
C．my brother doesn't, too　　D．nor does my brother

（　）5. Little_____ know where Herb was, and _____Dan.（2003）
A．did Frank; neither did　　B．didn't Frank; neither did
C．Frank didn't; neither did　　D．did Frank; nor did

（　）6. Little _____ about her illness and still works very hard at her lessons.（2004）
A．Mary knows　　B．did Mary know
C．does Mary know　　D．Mary didn't know about something

（　）7. Hardly _____ when it started to rain.（2005）
A．does the game begin　　B．did the game begin
C．has the game begun　　D．had the game begun

（　）8. He is English, and _____.（2005）
A．so does Kate　　B．so Kate does
C．so is Kate　　D．so Kate is

（　）9. _____, he can make his own living.（2006）
A．As he is a child　　B．Child although he is
C．Child as he is　　D．A child as he is

（　）10. _____ had he reached home when it began to rain.（2007）
A．No sooner　B．Only then　　C．Rarely　　D．Hardly

（　）11. On the top of the hill_____, where the monk once lived.（2008）
A．does a temple stand　　B．a temple stands there
C．stand a temple there　　D．stands a temple

（　）12. No sooner ____ asleep than she heard a knock at the door.（2009）
A．she had fallen　　B．had she fallen
C．she fell　　D．she did fall

（　）13. Not only ____ give people relaxation and pleasure, but ____ increase their knowledge of any kind.（2010）
A．can travel; it can　　B．travel can; can it
C．can travel; can it　　D．travel can; it can

（　）14. _____ my advice, you would have got the tickets for the Cup Final.（2011）
A．Had you taken　　B．You had taken
C．If you take　　D．If you have taken

（　）15. Not until all the fish died in the lake _____ how serious the water pollution was.（2011）

A．the villagers realized　　B．the villagers did realize

C．realized the villagers　　D．did the villagers realize

（　）16. Seldom _____ computer games ever since he entered college.（2012）

A．did he play　B. he played　　C．has he played　　D．he has played

（　）17. Try _____ he might, Mike couldn't get the tin open.（2013）

A．as　　B．till　　C．when　　D．if

（　）18. If Jack's wife won't go to the party, _____.（2014）

A．either he will　　B．he neither will

C．neither will he　　D．he will either

（　）19. Only through pure luck _____ the English speech contest.（2015）

A．did he manage to win　　B．he managed to win

C．he did manage to win　　D．managed he to win

小句法综合练习

（　）1. There's hardly _____ milk in the bottle, _____ there?

A．no; isn't　　B．some; is　　C．little; isn't　　D．any; is

（　）2. — What sport do you like best?

— Springboard diving（跳板跳水）._____ to dive into water from high board!

A．What a fun is it　　B．How fun it is

C．How a fun is it　　D．What fun it is

（　）3. It _____ Mike and Mary who helped the old man several days ago.

A．was　　B．are　　C．were　　D．had been

（　）4. She didn't come to the party last Sunday. _____, she must have made the party more exciting.

A．If she came　　B．Would she come

C．Had she come　　D．Did she come

（　）5. _____ is going to America for further study.

A．He is said that　　B．People said that he

C．It was said he　　D．It is said that he

（　）6. The official made _____ clear that he would do everything possible to solve the problem.

A．it　　B．this　　C．that　　D．him

（　）7. Do I have to take this medicine? It _____ so terrible.

A．tastes　　B．is tasting　　C．is tasted　　D．has tasted

（　）8. Helen had to shout _____ above the sound of the music.

A．making herself hear　　B．to make herself hear

C．making herself heard　　D．to make herself heard

（　）9. Unless _____ to speak, you should remain silent at the conference.

A. invited　　B. inviting　　C. being invited　　D. having invited

（　）10. He used to get up at 6:30, _____?

A. didn't he　　B. did he　　C. used he　　D. wouldn't he

（　）11._____ these ancient buildings in this city are!

A. What perfectly protected　　B. How perfect protected

C. How perfectly protected　　D. What perfect protected

（　）12. Was _____ that I saw last night at the concert?

A. it you　　B. not you　　C. you　　D. that yourself

（　）13. I received his mother's telephone call at eleven. _____ that he was badly hurt in an accident yesterday.

A. Then did I know　　B. Only then I knew

C. Only then did I know　　D. Only then knew I

（　）14. _____ she reached home _____ she find that her diamond was gone.

A. As sooner as; than　　B. No sooner had; than

C. Hardly had; when　　D. Not until; did

（　）15. We think _____ our duty to pay taxes to our government.

A. that　　B. this　　C. its　　D. it

（　）16. On the top of the hill _____, where the monk once lived.

A. does a temple stand　　B. a temple stands there

C. stand a temple there　　D. stands a temple

（　）17. The little town is not _____, and it is _____ the old one.

A. what it used to be; twice the size of

B. what it was; twice larger

C. what it is; twice as large as

D. what it used to; larger twice

（　）18. They must have stayed at hotel last night, _____?

A. mustn't they　　B. haven't they

C. didn't they　　D. hadn't they

（　）19. It was _____ back home after the experiment.

A. not until midnight did he go

B. until midnight that he didn't go

C. not until midnight that he went

D. until midnight when he didn't go

（　）20. — We have to stop talking here outside. Listen, _____!

— Hurry up, or we'll be late.

A. there goes the bell　　B. there does the bell go

C. there the bell goes　　D. goes the bell there

动　词

一、时态和语态

要求　掌握各种时态的含义和基本用法；掌握某些固定句型中的动词时态。动词的语态与时态经常混合在一起放在一个真实的语境中考查，同学们必须学会确定语态、然后选择对应的时态。

讲解

（一）时态

1. 一般现在时：　am / is / are / v / v-es

（1）表示重复发生的动作或状态。

★ He takes a walk after supper every day. / I'm a teacher.

（2）表示客观真理。

★ The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

（3）在条件或时间状语从句中常用一般现在时代替一般将来时。

★ I can't leave unless my boss agrees.

（4）用于车、船、飞机等时刻表中安排好的事。

★ The plane takes off at 10:00 a.m.

（5）表示主语的特征、性格、能力等。

★ Mr. Smith hates fish and never eats any.

2. 一般过去时：　was / were / v-ed

（1）表示在过去某个确定的时间发生的动作或存在的状态。

★ I saw Tom in the street yesterday.

（2）表示在过去一段时间内，经常性或习惯性的动作。

★ When I was a child, I often played football in the street.

句型：It is time sb. did sth. 该……了，如：It is time you went to bed.
would rather sb. did sth. 宁愿某人做某事，如：I'd rather you came tomorrow.

（3）常用一般过去时表示依次发生的动作。

★　I got out of the taxi, paid the fare and managed it.

3. 一般将来时

（1）will / shall + 动词原形，表示谈话时临时决定的意图，具有临时性和偶然性。

★ — The telephone is ringing.　— I will answer it.
★ — Tom was sent to hospital just now. — I'm sorry to hear that. I'll go and see him.

（2）be going to do，有很强的计划性，打算干什么或表达根据某种迹象要发生的事。

★ Mary, you are going to buy a flat here, are you?

★ Look at the clouds! It's going to rain.

（3）be about to do，正要做某事，表示即将发生的动作。不与表示将来的时间状语连用，常与 when 连用，when 并列连词，“ 就在这时 ”。

★ I was about to leave when it rained. 我正要离开，就在这时下雨了。

（4）be to do，表示客观安排或受人指示而做某事。

★ I am to play football tomorrow afternoon.

（5）用表示 “ 来、去 ” 的动词如 come，go，start，begin，leave 等的进行时表示将来时。

★ I've won a holiday for two to Florida. I am taking my mum.

4. 过去将来时：参照一般将来时

5. 现在进行时：am / is / are doing

（1）表示说话时正在进行的动作。

★ It's raining heavily now, so we must stay inside.

（2）表示现阶段一直在进行的动作。

★ He is teaching English and learning Chinese.

（3）表示按计划近期内即将发生的动作。

★ I am meeting Mr. Wang tonight.

（4）与 always，often 等频度副词连用，表示经常反复的行为或某种感情色彩。

★ The girl is always talking loud in public. 那个女孩总爱当众大声喧哗。

6. 过去进行时：was / were doing

（1）表示过去某一时刻或某一段时间里正在进行的动作。

★ What was he doing this time yesterday?

（2）描述一件事发生的背景；一个长动作发生的时候，另一个短动作发生。

★ It was raining when they left the shop.

7. 现在完成时： has / have done

（1）表示动作发生在过去，但对现在仍留下某种后果和影响。

★ I've had breakfast.

（2）表示动作发生在过去且持续到现在。

★ My mother has been ill for three days.

（3）have / has been to 曾去过。

★ We have been to the Great Wall many times.

（4）下列句型中常用现在完成时：

It is（has been）+ 一段时间 + since + 从句（一般过去时）
This（It）is the first（second…）time that + 现在完成时
This / It is 最高级…. + that + 现在完成时

★ It's / It has been 3 years since they got married.
★ It's the first time that I have been in Beijing.
★ This is the most interesting film that I have seen.

8. 过去完成时： had done

（1）表示在过去某一时刻或动作之前已经完成了的动作，即“过去的过去”。

★ The film had already begun when I got there.
★ We had finished the work by the end of last month / by the time he came.

（2）表示由过去某一时间开始，一直延续到过去另一个时间的动作或状态。

★ I had been at the bus stop for 20 minutes when a bus finally came.

（3）用于 Hardly … when / No sooner … than …（一……就……）等句子中。

★ Hardly had we arrived when she started complaining.

（4）hope，think，expect，intend，mean，suppose，want，imagine 等，用过去完成时表示过去未实现的希望或意图。

★ I had hoped to be able to take my seat in all this noise without being found.
我本希望能乘着这些噪声不被发现地坐到座位上。（但实际上未实现）

9. 现在完成进行时： have / has been doing

（1）表示过去开始、现在仍在继续或者刚刚结束的动作。

★ I have been thinking it over.　我一直在仔细考虑这件事。

（2）表示不间断的重复的动作。

★ Justin has been calling Marie every night last week.贾斯丁上周每晚都给玛丽打电话。

（二）语态

1. 语态在各种时态中的对比表

	主动语态	被动语态
一般现在时	do / does	am / is / are done
一般将来时	will do be going to do	will be done be going to be done
一般过去时	did	was / were done
现在进行时	am / is / are doing	am / is / are being done
现在完成时	have / has done	have / has been done
情态动词	情态动词 + do	情态动词 + be done

2. 主动形式表示被动意义的用法

（1）need / want / require（要求，需要），be worth（值得），后面接 doing。

★ The book is worth reading.

★ Your hair needs cutting（= needs to be cut）.

（2）不定式作定语，放在被修饰词后面，与前面被修饰的名词或代词有动宾关系，又在句子中与另一名词或代词有主谓关系，不定式要用主动表示被动含义。

★ I have much work to do.（to do 与 work 有动宾关系，与 I 有主谓关系。即“我去做”。）

比较：I have a letter to be typed.（type 这个动作不是 I 完成的，也许 to be typed by you / him / her…）

（3）在“主语 + 系动词 + 形容词 + 不定式”句型中，如果形容词是表示难易、利弊等含义时（difficult，easy，comfortable，convenient，hard，cheap，expensive，etc.），不定式用主动表示被动。

★ The question is difficult to answer. = It's difficult to answer the question.

★ The work is easy to do. = It's easy to do the work.

（4）不及物动词没有被动语态。如：take place，happen，come about，occur（发生），break out（爆发），last（持续）等。

★ The war broke out in 1914.

★ The film lasts two hours.

（5）一些动词 sell（销售）、wash（洗）、write（写）等与副词 well（好）、easily（容易地）等连用，描绘事物的特性，用主动表示被动。

★ The book sells well.

★ These clothes wash easily.

（6）某些连系动词（如 look，sound，smell，feel，taste，prove 等）要用主动表示被动。

★ The flower smells nice.

★ My advice proved to be wrong.

样题

样题 1. — I'm sure Andrew will win the first prize in the final.

— I think so. He _____ for it for months.

A．is preparing　　B．was preparing

C．had been preparing　　D．has been preparing

【分析】选择 D。考查现在完成进行时的用法，指 Andrew 几个月来一直在为决赛做准备。

样题 2. — _____ you ever _____ to New York?

— Yes, I _____ there many years ago.

A．Did; go; have been　　B．Have; gone; went

C．Have; been; went　　D．Have; been; had gone

【分析】选择 C。have been to 曾经去过。答句时间状语是 many years ago，时态为一般过去时。

练习一

（　）1. I can guess you were in a hurry. You ____ your sweater inside out.
A．had worn　B．wore　C．were wearing　D．are wearing

（　）2. He will stop showing off, if no notice ____ of him.
A．is taken　B．will be taken　C．takes　D．has taken

（　）3. — It is said that another new car factory ____ now.
— Yeah. It ____ one and a half years.
A．is building; takes　B．is being built; will take
C．is built; will take　D．is being built; takes

（　）4. — Has Jack finished his homework yet?
— I have no idea；he ____ it this morning.
A．was doing　B．had been doing　C．has done　D．did

（　）5. — Alice came back home the day before yesterday.
— Really ? Where ____?
A．has she been B．had she been　C．has she gone　D．had she gone

（　）6. I ____ ping-pong quite well, but I haven't had time to play since October.
A．will play　B．have played　C．played　D．play

（　）7. I've won a holiday for two to Florida. I ____ my mum.
A．take　B．am taking　C．have taken　D．will have taken

（　）8. I didn't like Aunt Lucy, who ____ without warning and bringing us presents.
A．always turned up　B．has always turned up
C．was always turning up　D．was always turned up

（　）9. — Did he notice you enter the room?
— I don't think so. He ____ to the radio with his eyes shut.
A．listened　B．was listening
C．has listened　D．had listened

（　）10. The plane ____ at 7:00 p.m., so I have to be at the airport by 6:40 at the latest.
A．has left　B．is to leave
C．will have left　D．leaves

（　）11. — _____ you _____ the editor at the airport?
— No, he _____ away before my arrival.
A．Have; met; has driven　B．Had; met; was driven
C．Did; meet; had been driven　D．Have; met; had driven

（　）12. I want to buy that kind of cloth because I ____ the cloth ____ well.
A．have told; washes　B．have been told; washes
C．was told; washed　D．have been told; is washed

（　）13. I _____ to take a good holiday this year, but I wasn't able to get away.
A．hope　B．have hoped

C．had hoped　　D．hoped

（　）14. As she ____ the newspaper, Granny ____ asleep.

A．read; was falling　　B．was reading; fell

C．was reading; was falling　　D．read; fell

（　）15. This is the first time we ____ a film in the cinema together as a family.

A．see　　B．had see　　C．saw　　D．have seen

（　）16. — Hi, Torry, can I use your computer for a while this afternoon?

— Sorry. _____.

A．It's repaired　　B．It has been repaired

C．It's being repaired　　D．It had been repaired

（　）17. The BBC news is usually not difficult to _____, but it's often too hard to ____.

A．pick up; be understood　　B．pick up; understand

C．be picked; understand　　D．be picked; be understood

（　）18. I ___ 900 English words by the time I was ten.

A．learned　　B．was learning　　C．had learned　　D. learnt

（　）19. Great changes _____ in the past ten years in China.

A．took place　　B. have taken place

C．were taken place　　D. have been taken place

（　）20. — What do you think of the TV play?

— Wonderful. It is worth _____ a second time.

A．watching　　B．watched　　C．seen　　D．seeing

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“时态和语态”高考真题。

（　）1. After he _____ his supper, he _____ a newspaper every evening.（2001）

A．has; read　　B．had; reads

C．has; reads　　D．had; read

（　）2. E-mail, as well as telephones, _____ widely in daily life.（2002）

A．is being used　　B．have used

C．are being used　　D．were used

（　）3. ___ the job _____ in such a short time?（2002）

A．Is; finished　　B．Has; finished

C．Can; finish　　D．Will; be finished

（　）4. — Why didn't you go to see the film yesterday?

— Because I _____ it already.（2002）

A．have seen　　B．saw

C．had seen　　D．was going to see

（　）5. The letter is _____ in French, I cannot read it.（2003）

A．writing　　B．written　　C．wrote　　D．writes

（　）6. I am not sure if he _____ the entrance examinations this year.（2003）

A．passes　　B．will pass

C．have passed　　D．passed

（　）7. When they left school, they _____ English for four years.（2003）

A．would have studied　　B．had studied

C．have studied　　D．would study

（　）8. — What ____ your teacher ____?

— He's handsome and tall.（2004）

A．does; like　　B．is; liked

C．is; like　　D．has; like

（　）9. Charles Chaplin copied other famous stars, _____ all kinds of ideas, and mixed them to develop his own way.（2004）

A．to borrow　　B．borrowed

C．borrowing　　D．borrows

（　）10. The number of the teachers in our school _____ every year.（2004）

A．change　　B．changes

C．has changed　　D．are changed

（　）11. — Tomorrow _____ my birthday. I'd like you and Jane to come.

— I'm not sure if she _____ free.（2004）

A．is; will be　　B．will be; is

C．is going to be; is going to be　　D．is; is

（　）12. Will you please lend me the novel when you _____ it?（2005）

A．finish　　B．finished

C．will finish　　D．will have finished

（　）13. This book is _____ to be difficult to _____.（2005）

A．considering; reading　　B．considered; be read

C．considering; read　　D．considered; read

（　）14. — It was careless of you to have left your clothes outside all night.

— My God! _____.（2006）

A．So did I　　B．I so did

C．I did so　　D．So I did

（　）15. She _____ Shanghai many times.（2006）

A．has gone to　　B. has been to

C．has been in　　D．was in

（　）16. I like listening to music, but what my sister enjoys _____ the piano.（2006）

A．play　　B．to play

C．playing　　D．is playing

（　）17. Our football team _____ 18 players, a coach and a doctor.（2006）

A．is made up of　　B．are made up of
C．make up of　　D．made up of

（　）18. It's ten years since they _____ .（2006）
A．have married　　B．have been married
C．got married　　D．have got married

（　）19. I _____ a cake when the light _____ out.（2007）
A．was making; went　　B．am; went
C．made; went　　D．have made; was going

（　）20. The type of clothing we wear _____ the weather.（2007）
A．depend on largely　　B．depend largely on
C．depends largely on　　D．depends on largely

（　）21. What do you think _____ over there?（2008）
A．is happening　　B．happening
C．to happen　　D．happen

（　）22. Scientists have many theories about how the universe（宇宙）____.（2010）
A．came into being　　B．was coming into being
C．had come into being　　D．would come into being

（　）23. — ____ you ever ____ to New York?
— Yes, I ____ there many years ago.（2010）
A．Did, go; have been　　B．Have, gone; went
C．Have, been; went　　D．Have, been; had gone

（　）24. John was given the same suitcase his father and grandfather _____ with them to school.（2010）
A．took　　B．were taking
C．had taken　　D．would take

（　）25. He _____ any of Chinese paintings before he visited the art museum.（2011）
A．will never see　　B．had never seen
C．has never seen　　D．would never see

（　）26. There is a knock at the door. It is the third time I _____ this afternoon.（2011）
A．am interrupting　　B．interrupted
C．have interrupted　　D．have been interrupted

（　）27. The government announced that twelve highways _____ by the end of 2011.（2012）
A．built　　B．had built
C．have been built　　D．had been built

（ ）28. She was praised for what she _____.（2012）
A．has done　　B．had done
C．have done　　D．would do

（　）29. The invitation letter to the boss _____ on his desk but he didn't read it until a

week later.（2013）

A．has put　　B．put　　C．puts　　D．was put

（　）30. By the time I finished the reading task，three hours _____.（2014）

A．has passed　　B．had passed

C．passed　　D．are passing

二、动词和动词短语

要求 动词和动词短语是历年高考单项选择考查的核心。要求同学们在具体语境中对其理解和实际运用。

讲解

（一）动词

分 类	功能及构成	例 词	例 句
实义动词	及物动词 + 宾语	give，tell，send，……	He gave me a present.
	不及物动词后不加宾语	work，swim，arrive，……	He arrived late.
系动词（必须跟表语构成系表结构）	状态类	be，remain，keep，stay，prove，seem，appear	He kept silent at the meeting. He seems (to be) very sad.
	感觉类	feel，smell，sound，taste，look	This kind of cloth feels soft. This flower smells very sweet.
	变化类	become，grow，turn，fall，get，go，come	The fish went bad. My dream has come true.
助动词	须与动词原形或分词构成复合谓语	be，have，do，shall，will	He doesn't like English. I have bought a car.
情态动词	必须和动词原形连用构成谓语（ought 除外）	can（could），may（might），shall（should），will（would），must，need，dare	We can't carry the heavy box. He may come tomorrow.

（二）动词短语

构 成	例 词	例 句
动词 + 副词	turn up，turn off，……	He turned up after the party when everyone had left. Please turn every light in the house off.
动词 + 介词	agree with，……	I agree with you on that point.
动词 + 副词 + 介词	look forward to，……	I look forward to seeing you soon.
动词 + 名词 + 介词	make use of，……	You should make full use of your time.
动词 + 名词	take place，……	Great changes are taking place in our life.

1. agree 短语

sb. agree with sb.　某人同意某人的话 / 意见	sth. agree with sb.　某物 / 某事适应某人
agree on sth.　就……达成共识	agree to do sth.　同意干某事
agree to the plan / decision / arrangement / an opinion…　同意计划 / 决定 / 安排 / 观点……	

2. be 短语

be up to sb.　由某人决定	be crazy about　对……狂热
be known / famous as　作为……而闻名	be known for　因……而出名
be known to　为……所知	be married to　与……结婚
be tired of / be sick of / be bored with　对……厌烦	be dressed in　穿着
be experienced in　对……有经验	be equipped with　装备
be about to do sth.　正要做	be fit for　胜任；适合于
be worth doing　值得做……	be proud of　以……骄傲

3. break 短语

break away（from）脱离；改掉（习惯）	break down（身体）垮掉；（汽车）抛锚
break in / into　闯入	（fire，disease，war，etc.）break out（火灾，疾病，战争等）突发，爆发

4. bring 短语

bring about　引起，造成	bring back　拿回；使回忆起来
bring down　使倒下；降低	bring in　挣得；介绍；引进
bring out　揭示，揭露	bring up　抚养；呕吐

5. call 短语

call at + sp.　拜访某地	call on / upon + sb.　访问，拜访某人
call for　要求；需要	call in　召集；请来
call off　取消	call up　打电话；令人想起

6. carry　短语

carry on　进行；进行下去	carry out　贯彻，执行

7. come 短语

come about　发生	come across　偶遇
come on　快点，加油，得了吧	come into being　形成；产生
come out　出来；出版	come up with　提出（主意，计划等）
come true　实现	come back　返回

8. cut 短语

cut down　砍倒；削减	cut in　插嘴；插入
cut off　切断；断绝	cut up　切碎

9. die 短语

die of　死于……（内因）	die out　灭绝
die from　死于……（外因）	die for　为……而死

10. get 短语

get along / on（with）与……相处；进展	get away　离开
get up　起床	get down to（doing）sth. 开始认真干
get in　收获	get off　下车；脱下
get through　接通电话；做完；通过	get out of　从……出来，摆脱
get in touch with　同……取得联系	get back　回来；取回
get together　相聚	get into　进人；陷入；养成
get rid of　除掉，改掉	get close（to）接近
get a bargain　买到便宜货	get over（从疾病中）恢复；克服
get…across（to sb.）把……讲清楚	get lost　迷路

11. give 短语

give away　泄露；出卖，赠送	give in　让步，投降
give off　发出（蒸汽、液体、雾等）	give back　归还，送回
give out　分发；发出（气味、热等）	give up on sb.　放弃某人
give up　放弃	give sb. a lift　让某人搭车
give sb. a hand　帮某人一个忙	give sb. your regards　向某人问候

12. go 短语

go against　反对；违反	go by（从……旁）走过，（时间）过去
go down　下降	go in for　参加；爱好
go over　仔细检查；复习	go through　经历
go with　伴随；与……相配	go ahead　用吧 / 说吧 / 干吧（表示同意）
go out　（灯、火）熄灭，外出	go bad　变坏
go on with sth.　继续	go on to do sth. 接着做另外的事
go on doing sth.　继续干原来在干的事	go back　回家，追溯
go up（价格，温度）上升，上涨	go down　下降，下沉
go sightseeing　去观光	go wrong　出差错
go without saying　理所当然	

13. keep 短语

keep an eye on　注意；监视	keep away from　不让接近；远离
keep one's word / keep a promise　守信	keep silent　保持沉默
keep in mind　记住	keep in touch with　与……保持联系
keep on　继续	keep up with　跟上；不落后
keep off　勿踏，勿踩，远离……	keep out of　使……不进入

keep fit 保持健康
keep a balance between A and B 保持 A 与 B 的均衡
keep / prevent / stop…from doing… 防止……做某事

14. look 短语

look after 照顾，照看
look ahead 向前看；着眼未来
look forward to 盼望
look around 四处看
look down upon 看不起；轻视
look up to sb. 尊敬
look out 小心；当心
look on 旁观
look into 调查
look through 浏览
look up 查寻；向上看
look for / hunt for / search for 寻找
look on…as（= treat / consider / take / regard / think of… as）把……看作

15. make 短语

make up 构成，编写，弥补，化妆，补上（功课）
make up one's mind 决心
make use of 利用
make fun of 取笑
make faces 做鬼脸
make mistakes 犯错误
make friends with sb. 与……某人交朋友
make a living 谋生
make sure 确信
make money 挣钱
make a promise 许下诺言
make a difference 有所差别，有影响
make progress 进步
make it 成功，定时间
make out 理解；辨认出
be made up of 由……组成
make room / space for 给……腾出地方
be made of 用……制造
be made in 在……制造
be made from 由……制造
make an apology to sb. for sth. 因……向……道歉
make the best / most of 充分利用

16. put 短语

put away 放好；储存
put through （打电话）接通
put into practice 把……付诸实施
put off 推迟
put on 穿上
put out 扑灭
put up 举起；张贴
put up with（= stand / bear）忍受
put…into use 把……投入使用

17. set 短语

set about 开始，着手做某事
set out 出发
set aside 留出，把……放一旁
set off（for）出发，使爆炸
set up 设立；树立
set free 释放

18. take 短语

take back 收回
take in 吸收

take off　脱衣；起飞
take over　接收，接管
take away　拿走
take care of　照顾，负责
take it easy　别紧张，放松点
take part in　参加
take place　发生
take pride in = be proud of　为……感到骄傲
take advantage of　利用
take risks to do sth.　冒险做某事
take measures / steps to do sth.　采取措施做某事
take on　呈现
take up　占据（时间或空间）；开始从事
take…out　拿出去
take down　记下
take one's seat　坐下，坐好
take turns to do sth.　轮流
take the place of　代替
take one's place　就座；代替某人职位
take your time　慢慢来
take actions to do sth.　采取行动做某事

19. turn 短语

turn down　调低；拒绝
turn into　（使）变成
turn off　关掉
turn out　结果是
turn to　转向；求助于
turn in　上交
turn up　出现；开大（音量）
turn on　开启
turn over　翻过来

20. show 短语

show sb. around sp.　领某人参观某地
show off　炫耀
show respect to sb.　向某人表示尊敬
show sb. out　领某人出去
show sb. in　领某人进来

21. 其他动词短语请参考 Book 1～Book 5。请同学们平时注意积累。这里归纳一部分：

accuse sb. of sth.　控告
act as　担任
add to　增加
address sb. as　称呼某人为……
admire sb. for sth.　因……而钦佩某人
admit doing sth.　承认做某事
advise doing sth.　建议做某事
allow sb. to do sth.　允许某人做某事
make an announcement　发布通知
apply for a job / visa　申请工作 / 签证
appreciate（one's doing ）sth.　欣赏；感激
arrange for sb. to do sth.　安排某人做某事
beat sb. to death　把某人打死
attend the meeting　出席会议
charge sb. with sth.　控告
add up to　总计
add…to…　把……加到……中
adapt to　适应
make an appointment with sb.　与某人有约
advise sb. to do sth.　建议某人做某事
afford a car　买得起车
allow doing sth.　允许做某事
apply… to…　把……运用到……
apologize to sb. for sth.　因某事向某人道歉
argue with sb. about sth.　与某人争论某事
attempt to do sth.　试图做某事
avoid（doing）sth.　避免（做）某事
pay attention to（doing）sth.　注意（做）某事

award sb. sth.　授予 / 判给某人某物
beyond description　无法用语言描述
beg sb. to do sth.　乞求某人做某事
care about　关注，在乎
carry out a task　执行一个任务
check in　登记入住
clean up　清理
lose contact with　失去联系
who cares?　管它呢
complain to sb. about sth.　向某人抱怨某事

congratulate sb. on sth.　关于某事祝贺某人
consist of　由……组成（无被动）
deny doing sth.　否认做某事
depend on / count on / rely on　依靠
drop in on sb. / drop in at sp.　顺便拜访
drink to sb. / sth.　为……干杯
encourage sb. to do sth.　鼓励某人做某事
fall behind　落后
fall asleep　入睡
feel at home　感到自在
feel free to do sth.　随便做某事
fill in / out　填写
graduate from　毕业于
hear from　收到某人来信
had better do sth.　最好做某事
hang up　挂断
hang out　常去某处闲逛
have influence / effect on　对……有影响
inspire sb. to do sth.　激励某人做某事
jot down　草草记下
lack sth.　缺乏某物
lead to　导致；通向
leave sth. aside　不予考虑；搁置一边
lose weight　减肥
lose one's temper　发脾气
manage to do sth.　设法做成功某事
meet one's needs　满足要求
participate in　参加
pass away　过世
belong to　属于（无被动，无进行时）
burst into tears　突然哭起来
care for　关心，照顾，喜欢
change one's mind　改变主意
check out　退房
have contact with　与……有联系
keep in contact with　与某人保持联系
compare A with B　把 A 与 B 比较
make a complaint about sth.　就……提出投诉
concentrate on　集中注意力在……上
consider doing sth.　考虑做某事
delay doing / put off doing sth.　推迟做某事
do good to sb. / do sb. good　对某人有好处
do sb. a favour　帮某人一个忙
end up with / doing　以……告终
fall in love with　爱上
fall ill　生病
figure sth. out　弄清楚
feel like doing sth.　想要做某事
force sb. to do sth.　强迫某人做某事
forget it　算了，没关系
happen to do sth.　碰巧做某事
help sb. out　帮助某人摆脱困境
hand out　分发
hang on　别挂断电话
inform sb. of sth.　通知某人某事
insist on（doing）sth.　坚持（做）某事
intend to do sth.　打算做某事
knock down　撞倒
lay off　下岗
leave out　遗漏，删除
let sb. down　使某人失望
lose one's way　迷路
lose one's job　失业
mind your own business　别管闲事
mistake A for B　错把 A 当作 B
pass by　经过，时间流逝

pass the time　消磨时间
pay back　偿还
pay off　付清，还清债务
play an important part / role in　在某方面起重要作用
pretend to be　假装是
prevent sth. / sb.（from）doing　阻止……做某事
raise money　筹集资金
raise one's voice　提高嗓音
relax oneself　放松自己
result from　由于
result in　导致
remind sb. to do sth.　提醒某人做某事
remind sb. of sth.　提醒某人某事
run out of sth. / sth. run out　用完
run into　偶遇
run away　逃跑
rob sb. of sth.　抢某人东西
save up　储蓄
send for　派人去请
sign up for　报名参加
skip breakfast　不吃早饭
stare at　凝视，盯着看
stay up late　熬夜
stand in line　排队等候
stand for　代表
stand out　突出
stick to sth.　坚持做某事
succeed in doing sth.　成功做某事
suffer from　遭受；因疾病 / 痛苦等受苦
suggest doing sth.　建议做某事
take a leave　请假
take a seat / be seated　就座
try on　试穿
try out　试验
throw away　扔掉
turn a deaf ear to　装作没听到
use up　用完
watch out（for sth.）小心
wear off　逐渐消失
work out　锻炼；解出，制订（计划）
worth every penny　钱花得很值
win second place　获第二名
wipe up　擦干
warn sb. about / of sth.　警告某人某事

prefer to do sth.（rather than do sth.）　宁愿做……而不愿做……
pick up　捡，接某人，收听，偶然学会，用较少的钱买到
have difficulty（in）doing sth. = have a hard time（in）doing sth.　做某事有困难
have sth. / nothing to do with…　与……有关 / 无关
have no choice but to do sth.　除了做某事别无选择
consider…to be / as… = regard…as = think of…as = look on…as = treat…as　认为……是
bargain with sb. about sth.　与某人就某事讨价还价
make an apology to sb. for sth.　因……向某人道歉
do sb. harm = do harm to sb. = be harmful to sb.　对某人有害
provide sb. with sth. / provide sth. for sb. = supply sb. with sth. / supply sth. to sb. = offer sb. sth. / offer sth. to sb.　提供某人某物

样题

样题 1. — Do you think that housing price will keep _____ in the years to come?
— Sorry, I have no idea.

A．lifting up　B．going up　C．bringing up　D．growing up

【分析】选择 B。go up 上涨。

样题 2. Let Harry play with your toys as well, Clare, you must learn to _____.

A．support　B．care　C．spare　D．share

【分析】选择 D。share 分享。

练习一

（　）1. My father tells me to _____ my plan carefully before I carry it out.

A．think back　B．think of　C．think over　D．think out

（　）2. When studying at university he _____ many student movements and later he _____ the Communist Party of China.

A．attended; joined　B．took part in; joined

C．joined; took part in　D．joined in; took part in

（　）3. As we all know, acting before thinking always _____ failure.

A．results from　B．results in

C．resulted from　D．resulted in

（　）4. My father often tells us not _____ to the difficulties we meet.

A．give in　B．give up　C．give out　D．give off

（　）5. Though Mike had been _____ Jane's birthday party now and then, he forgot to attend it, which made her angry.

A．reminded of　B．mentioned with

C．told about　D．warned with

（　）6. A university _____ teachers, administrators and students.

A．is consisted of　B．is made up

C．consists of　D．consists in

（　）7. The only thing he seems to _____ is money.

A．care about　B．care of

C．take care　D．take care of

（　）8. Hard work _____ success while failure often _____ laziness.

A．lies in; results in　B．leads to; lies in

C．leads to; depends on　D．leading to; existing

（　）9. Smoking _____ his lung cancer.

A．devotes to　B．contributes to

C．causes to　D．comes about

（　）10. There are still many people suffering a lot, and we are to do something to _____ poverty.

A．keep out　B．wipe out

C．give out　D．run out

（　）11. — Can you help me with the maths homework, mom?

— You can't always _____ other's help for your homework. Do it by yourself this time, Dear.

A. wait on　　B. rely on　　C. insist on　　D. turn on

（　）12. Another training centre on computer will be _____.

A. set up　　B. put up　　C. sent up　　D. put on

（　）13. His mother had though it would be good for his character to _____ from home and earn some money on his own.

A. run away　　B. take away　　C. keep away　　D. get away

（　）14. All the people present _____ as the two men fought in the square.

A. looked on　　B. looked around　　C. looked for　　D. looked at

（　）15. Alice was very sorry to hear that her grandmother had _____ two days before.

A. broken off　　B. passed off　　C. given away　　D. passed away

（　）16. I _____ her not to walk on the thin ice but she would not listen to me.

A. warned　　B. persuaded　　C. suggested　　D. notice

（　）17. If we can _____ our present difficulties, then everything should be all right.

A. get off　　B. come across　　C. come over　　D. get over

（　）18. — Can I do the job?

— I'm afraid not, because it _____ skill and patience.

A. calls for　　B. asks for　　C. sends for　　D. cares for

（　）19. To everybody's surprise, the fashionable young lady _____ to be a thief.

A. found out　　B. proved out　　C. turned out　　D. put out

（　）20. If you are not sure of the meaning of this word, you can _____ the dictionary.

A. refer to　　B. look up　　C. see　　D. make use of

（　）21. This company can _____ a lot money for the country in a year?

A. bring up　　B. bring in　　C. bring down　　D. bring out

（　）22. She _____ his number in the phone book to make sure that she had got it right.

A. looked up　　B. looked for　　C. picked out　　D. picked up

（　）23. My study of biology has _____ much of my spare time, but it has given me a great deal of enjoyment.

A. taken off　　B. taken down　　C. taken up　　D. taken away

（　）24. I asked for a day off but the boss _____ my request.

A. turned down　　B. turned out

C. turned on　　D. turned off

（　）25. Though tired and hungry, the explorers had to _____ their walk through the forest.

A. carry off　　B. carry on　　C. carry out　　D. carry away

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“动词和动词短语”高考真题。

（ ）1. He is not a clever child, but he has made up his mind to ____ his classmates.（2001）

A．keep with　B．catch up with　C．meet with　D．agree with

（ ）2. Please _____ the light, because I can't sleep well with it.（2001）

A．turn on　B．turn off　C．turn to　D．turn up

（ ）3. I nearly _____ the ladder.（2001）

A．fell in　B．fell away　C．fell off　D．fell behind

（ ）4. The teacher asked them to _____ the problem after class.（2001）

A．talk　B．discuss　C．talking　D．discussing

（ ）5. Mr. Hart looked in the rear-view mirror and suddenly ___ the man's face. He ___ that the man was a thief.（2002）

A．recognized; realized　B．realized; recognized

C．recognized; showed　D．realized; knew

（ ）6. What he said just now _____ useful to our work.（2002）

A．feels　B．smells

C．means　D．sounds

（ ）7. I _____ staying at home to going to the cinema.（2002）

A．prefer　B．would like

C．like　D．enjoy

（ ）8. "You have _____ all your patients. There's no one sick now."（2002）

A．checked　B．cured　C．cared　D．treated

（ ）9. The car _____ on the way to the station.（2002）

A．broke through　B．broke into

C．broke down　D．broke up

（ ）10. They went to the library and _____ the ads in newspapers.（2002）

A．saw　B．read　C．watched　D．looked at

（ ）11. They asked me to _____ as their consultant（顾问）.（2002）

A．come in　B．come up　C．come on　D．come to

（ ）12. The old photographs _____ me ____ my childhood in the country.（2002）

A．call; of　B．remind; of　C．remembers; of　D．tell; of

（ ）13. Would you _____ a cup of coffee？（2002）

A．want　B．need　C．care for　D．require

（ ）14. "I _____ awake all night thinking of you," he _____to me.（2003）

A．lied; lay　B．lay; lay　C．lied; lied　D．lay; lied

（ ）15. Would you _____ looking after the flowers while I'm away?（2003）

A．please　B．like　C．mind　D．agree

（ ）16. She _____ us with several cups of coffee.（2003）

A．saved　B．spared　C．served　D．sold

（　）17. He won't _____ to buy some bread unless I tell him again.（2003）

A. remember　B. forget　C. afford　D. hope

（　）18. When I was at university, I _____ a room with Jim, whose father is a famous singer.（2003）

A. lived　B. stayed　C. spent　D. shared

（　）19. At the airport, the officials _____ my luggage carefully before I got on the plane.（2003）

A. watched　B. noticed　C. examined　D. looked

（　）20. Taking some exercises every day will _____ your health.（2004）

A. make up　B. take up　C. build up　D. put up

（　）21. A stranger stopped my car and asked me to give him a _____.（2004）

A. rise　B. lift　C. walk　D. seat

（　）22. Cheaters in the exam _____ their honesty and act like a thief.（2004）

A. give in　B. give off　C. give out　D. give away

（　）23. The patient has his temperature _____ 3 times a day.（2004）

A. read　B. made　C. raised　D. taken

（　）24. The customers' needs can't be _____ by the company at once.（2004）

A. agreed　B. done　C. allowed　D. met

（　）25. The suit doesn't seem to _____ you.（2005）

A. fit on　B. fit for　C. be fit　D. fit

（　）26. He began to _____ at the age of 12.（2005）

A. earn his living　B. make his life

C. earn his life　D. support his life

（　）27. They searched for the ball for a while, but eventually _____ and went home.（2005）

A. gave in　B. gave up　C. gave off　D. gave away

（　）28. He _____ live in the country than in the city.（2005）

A. prefers　B. likes to　C. had better　D. would rather

（　）29. The medicine will _____ you good.（2005）

A. do　B. save　C. give　D. help

（　）30. Anyhow, party foods _____ as a full meal.（2006）

A. aren't supposed to be eaten　B. aren't supposed to eat

C. isn't supposed to be eaten　D. isn't supposed to eat

（　）31. Sorry, I can't go out with you. I have a lot of important things to _____.（2006）

A. extend to　B. attend to　C. tend to　D. pretend to

（　）32. — When will Mr. White be back?

— Not sure. But I think you can _____ a message for him?（2006）

A. leave　B. take　C. give　D. carry

（ ）33. His careless driving _____ the traffic accident.（2006）

A．resulted in　B．resulted by　C．resulted from　D．resulted to

（ ）34. What you say does not _____ what you do.（2006）

A．agree on　B．agree to　C．agree about　D．agree with

（ ）35. This sort of work _____ skill, patience and cooperation.（2006）

A．calls for　B．calls on　C．calls in　D．calls at

（ ）36. The solution to the problem of power shortage depends greatly upon _____ we can make _____ the solar energy .（2006）

A．how to use; of　B．how many uses; in

C．what use; in　D．how much use; of

（ ）37. The word is familiar to me, but I can't _____ which unit it is in.（2006）

A．remind　B．report　C．recall　D．return

（ ）38. Trains stop here in order to _____ passengers.（2007）

A．get off　B．pick up　C．pull up　D．bring up

（ ）39. That house always _____ me of holidays I spent in France.（2007）

A．awakens　B．recalls　C．connects　D．reminds

（ ）40. Without my glasses I can hardly ____ what has been written in the letter.（2007）

A．make out　B．make for　C．make up　D．make over

（ ）41. To _____ the expense, every dollar should be spent carefully.（2007）

A．cut down　B．turn down　C．put down　D．slow down

（ ）42. I wonder who will _____ as secretary of our club next year.（2007）

A．take up　B．take on　C．take in　D．take over

（ ）43. Never _____ till tomorrow what may be done today.（2007）

A．put off　B．put out　C．put on　D. put up

（ ）44. He _____ so many dollars on the junk food.（2008）

A．spent　B．took　C．paid　D．cost

（ ）45. Why not take _____ of opportunity to thank the couples for their help?（2008）

A．profit　B．benefit　C．advantage　D．interest

（ ）46. During the Spring Festival, he _____ his uncle's.（2008）

A．called for　B．called at　C．called up　D．called on

（ ）47. A good friend should _____ joys and sorrows.（2008）

A．satisfy　B．share　C．fill　D．cover

（ ）48. The weather _____ our lives in lots of ways.（2008）

A．affects　B．effects　C．causes　D．courses

（ ）49. Our discussion group _____ five girls and four boys.（2009）

A．is made of　B．are made from

C．is made up of　D．are made up from

（ ）50. It's not good to hide your anger, so you should find a way to _____.（2009）

A．let it out　　B．let out it　　C．let it in　　D．let in it

（　）51. Martin Luther King ____ equality all his life.（2009）

A．worked with　　B．worked for

C．worked out　　D．worked on

（　）52. I'll ____ at the school gate at about 9 o'clock. Please wait for me there.（2010）

A．pick up you　　B. pick you up

C．pick you out　　D．pick out you

（　）53. You should ____ yourself to the new environment.（2010）

A．suit　　B．match　　C．fit　　D．adapt

（　）54. It ____ no difference to me ____ you like him or not.（2010）

A．makes; whether　　B．makes; if

C．gives; whether　　D．gives; if

（　）55. I'm sorry to have ____ you with so many questions on such an occasion.（2010）

A．involved　　B．impressed　　C．bothered　　D．interfered

（　）56. If you want to lose weight, please ____ our keeping-fit club.（2010）

A．take part in　B．join in　　C．join　　D．attend

（　）57. The museum _____ in the northeast of the city.（2011）

A．sit　　B．located　　C．lies　　D．stand

（　）58. Our school trip was _____ because of the heavy rain.（2011）

A．called on　　B．called off　　C．called for　　D．called up

（　）59. The old photo on your desk _____ me of that Australian professor.（2011）

A．informed　　B．reminded　　C．mentioned　　D．memorized

（　）60. The novelist _____ lots of funny characters in his works.（2011）

A．created　　B．invented　　C．recovered　　D．discovered

（　）61. When Mary returned several days later, she found that all plates still _____ where she had _____ them.（2012）

A．lay; laid　　B．lied; laid　　C．lay; lain　　D．lied; lain

（　）62. Luckily, the electrical fire was _____ in time, but it was difficult for us to fall asleep again.（2012）

A．put on　　B．put off　　C．put out　　D．put away

（　）63. I'd like to take _____ of this opportunity to thank you for your cooperation.（2012）

A．interest　　B．advantage　　C．use　　D．benefit

（　）64. Don't _____ your time trying to persuade him. He will never listen to you.（2012）

A．waste　　B．take　　C．miss　　D．lose

（　）65. Nowadays many young couples _____ their parents, which is not good.（2012）

A．look on　　B．depend on　　C．turn on　　D．take on

（　）66. The pupil had no choice but to _____ an excuse to explain his low score on the test.（2012）

A．make out　B．make off　C．make up　D．make over

（　）67. Lucy's failure in the entrance exam was a great blow to her parents and it took them a long time to _____ their disappointment.（2013）

A．get over　B．get on　C．get off　D．get in

（　）68. They soon _____ doing the same work day after day, and give up in the end.（2013）

A．got along with　B．got down to

C．got away from　D．got tired of

（　）69. The secretary is a good employee who always _____ a great amount of time working during the weekend.（2013）

A．spends　B．spend　C．takes　D．take

（　）70. Little Carol _____ some knowledge of the computer just by playing games with her father.（2013）

A．got up　B．made up　C．set up　D．picked up

（　）71. Would you please _____ the essay for me and see if there are any obvious mistakes?（2013）

A．look up　B．look for　C．look through　D．look around

（　）72. Last year was a hard time for my friend Bill, but he didn't _____ hope.（2014）

A．pick up　B．use up　C．catch up　D．give up

（　）73. He came into the kitchen and asked how I was ____ on with the cooking.（2014）

A．making　B．taking　C．doing　D．getting

（　）74. People usually _____ "Hello" to each other when they meet on the street.（2014）

A．say　B．tell　C．speak　D．talk

（　）75. Regardless of the environment you work in, you are _____ face various conflicts.（2014）

A．used to　B．responsible for　C．bound to　D．reliable on

（　）76．The manager will have to _____ the shop assistant because he has received several letters of complaint against her.（2015）

A．lay off　B．give off　C．take off　D．turn off

三、非谓语动词

要求 掌握非谓语动词的一些最基本用法；掌握动名词作主语；掌握分词和不定式作定语、状语以及宾语补足语的用法；掌握分词的独立结构；掌握"with＋宾语＋非谓语动词"等的用法。

讲解

1. 动词不定式：to do（否定 not to do）

（1）不定式的形式：

He seems { to be a teacher.（一般式）
to be reading now.（进行式）
to have known the truth.（完成式）

（2）为避免头重脚轻，常用 it 作形式主语：

It's + adj + of / for sb. to do sth.

（3）不定式作宾语补足语：

ask / invite / force / advise / get sb. to do sth.
see / hear / watch / notice / feel / observe / find sb. do / doing / done
被动：be seen to do / doing / done

（4）固定结构：

had better do sth.　最好做某事（否定：had better not do sth.）
would rather do sth.　宁愿做某事
could do nothing but do sth. / have no choice but to do sth.

（口诀：有 do 没 to，有 to 没 do。即：but 前的谓语是 do 的某种形式，but 后的动词不定式省略 to；如果 but 前的谓语不是 do 的某种形式，but 后的动词不定式有 to。）

2. 动名词：doing

（1）句型：It's no use / good / a waste of time doing sth.

（2）作宾语：suggest / finish / avoid / mind / enjoy / practice / consider / appreciate / risk / excuse / imagine + doing sth.；think of / dream of / prevent…from + doing sth.；be worth doing

（3）作定语：a swimming pool = a pool for swimming

（4）动名词的复合结构：one's doing，否定 one's not doing

★ Do you mind my / me smoking ?
★ His coming made me happy. / His not coming made me unhappy.

（5）sth. / sb. need / want / require doing（= to be done）

★ The old man needs operating on. = The old man needs to be operated on.

3. **分词**

现在分词 doing 表示主动、进行，否定式 not doing，not having done；过去分词 done 表示被动、完成。

（1）作表语：

★ The film is disappointing.（*v*-ing，令人……的）
★ I am disappointed at the film.（*v*-ed，感到……的）

（2）作定语：

★ Look at the broken glasses.（单个分词放在所修饰词的前面）
★ The boy swimming in the pool is my brother.（短语放在所修饰词的后面）

（3）作宾补：

leave the door unlocked　　leave the water running
keep him waiting　　keep the door locked
have my hair cut　　have his leg broken
make himself understood / heard / noticed

（4）作状语（如果动作有明显时间先后，用 having done 来表示）

① 时间状语。

★ Hearing the bad news, she cried.
= On hearing the bad news, she cried.
= When she heard the bad news, she cried.

② 原因状语。

★ Being a student, I must study hard.
★ Having been to Beijing for many times, he knows the city well.

③ 方式或伴随状语。

★ He came in, followed by his students.
★ The students came in, following their teacher.
★ Seen from the hill, the city is beautiful.
★ Seeing from the hill, we found the city beautiful.
★ Surprised and shocked, he received the prize.（过去分词已演变为形容词，表状态）
★ Dressed in white, he looked more like a doctor.
★ Tasting good, the apple sells well.（注意有些动词无被动形式）

④ 结果状语。

★ The bus was held up by the heavy fog, causing the delay.
★ His parents died, leaving him an orphan.

⑤ 独立主格结构（这时非谓语动词的逻辑主语不是主句的主语，它自带主语）。

★ Weather permitting, we'll go to the park.
★ Work finished, we'll go to the park.

观察作状语的分词的逻辑主语是否是主句的主语，这是做题的关键。

★ When watching TV, I heard the door bell ring.　此句正确
★ When watching TV, the door bell ring.　此句错误

样题

样题 1. The question _____ at tomorrow's meeting is a very important one.

A．discussed　B．being discussed　C．to be discussed　D．discussing

【分析】选择 C。to be discussed at tomorrow's meeting“明天会议上将被讨论的”，不定式短语作定语，修饰 the question。

样题 2. It's no use _____ without taking any action.

A．complain　B．complaining　C．being complained D．to be complained

【分析】选择 B。句型“It's no use doing…”，做……是没用的。

样题 3. While watching TV, _____.

A．the door bell rang　B．the door bell rings

C．we heard the door bell ring　D．the door bell was heard to ring

【分析】选择 C。watching TV 为现在分词，必须和句子主语之间存在主动关系，句子主语只可能是 we。

练习一

（　）1. _____ his teacher, the student entered the lab.

A．Follow　B．Following　C．Followed　D．Having followed

（　）2. — Will she go shopping with us?

— She'll be happy _____ if _____.

A．to; invited　B．to do; is invited　C．/ ; inviting　D．to; inviting

（　）3. _____ in a heavy rain, he was all wet.

A．Catching　B．Caught　C．To catch　D．Having caugh

（　）4. Many teachers attended the meeting, Mr. Li _____.

A．including　B．included　C．to include　D．include

（　）5. I couldn't do my homework with all that noise _____.

A．going on　B．goes on　C．went on　D．to go on

（　）6. He hurried to the station, only _____ that the train had left.

A．to find　B．finding　C．found　D．to have found

（　）7. Mr. Reed made up his mind to devote all he had _____ some schools for poor children.

A．to set up　B．to setting up　C．set up　D．having set up

（　）8. Sandy could do nothing but _____ to his teacher that he was wrong.

A．admit　B．admitted　C．admitting　D．to admit

（　）9. _____ the course very difficult, she decided to move to a lower level.

A．Find　B．Finding　C．To find　D．Found

（　）10. When we saw the road ___ with snow, we decided to spend the holiday at home.

A．block　B．to block　C．blocking　D．blocked

（　）11. When _____ for his views about his teaching job, Philip said he found it very

interesting and rewarding.

A. asking　　B. asked　　C. having asked　　D. to be asked

（　）12. _____to work overtime that evening, I missed a wonderful film.

A. Having been asked　　B. To ask

C. Having asked　　D. To be asked

（　）13. _____ with care, one tin will last for six weeks.

A. Use　　B. Using　　C. Used　　D. To use

（　）14. Pressed from his parents, and ____ that he has wasted too much time, the boy is determined to stop playing video games.

A. realizing　　B. realized

C. to realize　　D. being realized

（　）15. _____ in a long queue, we waited for the store to open to buy a new iPad.

A. Standing　　B. To stand

C. Stood　　D. Stand

（　）16. George returned after the war, only _____ that his wife had left him.

A. to be told　　B. telling　　C. being told　　D. told

（　）17. He got up late and hurried to his office, _____ the breakfast untouched.

A. left　　B. to leave　　C. leaving　　D. having left

（　）18. This machine is very easy _____. Anybody can learn to use it in a few minutes.

A. operating　　B. to be operating　　C. operated　　D. to operate

（　）19. _____ into English, the sentence was found to have an entirely different word order.

A. Translating　　B. Translated　　C. To translate　　D. Having translated

（　）20. _____, the more expensive the camera, the better its quality.

A. General speaking　　B. Speaking general

C. Generally speaking　　D. Speaking generally

（　）21. _____ the exam, the boy regretted _____ hard at school.

A. Having not passed; not working　　B. Not having passed; not working

C. Having not passed; to not work　　D. Not having passed; not to work

（　）22. Mr. Smith, _____ of the _____ speech, started to read a novel.

A. tired; boring　　B. tiring; bored

C. tired; bored　　D. tiring; boring

（　）23. Though _____ natural resources, the area is well developed.

A. lacked　　B. lacking of　　C. lacking　　D. lacked in

（　）24. Though _____ of the danger, he still went skating on the thin ice.

A. warning　　B. to warn　　C. warn　　D. warned

（　）25. She was glad to see her child well _____.

A. take care of　　B. taken care of

C. taken care　　D. taking care of

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“非谓语动词”高考真题。

（　）1. “Stop _____,” said the teacher, “Let’s have our class.”（2001）

A．to talk　　B．talking　　C．talked　　D．talk

（　）2. My hair is too long. I’ll have it _____ soon.（2001）

A．cut　　B．to cut　　C．cutting　　D．cuts

（　）3. You’d better _____ your coat. It’s warm here.（2001）

A．to take off　　B．not to take off

C．to not take off　　D．take off

（　）4. The officer just finished ____ the young soldier some questions and was quite satisfied ____ him.（2001）

A．asking; with　　B．ask; to

C．asking; at　　D．to ask; by

（　）5. Soapy walked away, _____, because he couldn’t get himself arrested again.（2002）

A．disappointing　　B．to his disappointment

C．disappointed　　D．to be disappointed

（　）6. _____ electricity, an electrician must have meter.（2002）

A．Measure　　B．To measure

C．Measuring　　D．Measured

（　）7. The engine of the car is too old. It needs ____.（2002）

A．to replace　　B．being replaced

C．replacing　　D．replace

（　）8. _____ what to do next, she went to refer to her friend.（2003）

A．No knowing　　B．Not to know

C．Not knowing　　D．Not known

（　）9. — Let’s have a rest, shall we?

— Not now. I don’t want to stop _____ the letter yet.（2003）

A．type　　B．to type　　C．typing　　D．and type

（　）10. Asked if he could come to meeting that day, _____.（2004）

A．nobody said anything

B．nothing was said by him

C．John nodded his head and left the room

D．they didn’t get an answer from him

（　）11. Would you like _____ shopping with us or do you feel like _____ at home?（2004）

A．to go; to stay　　B．going; staying

C．going; to stay　　D．to go; staying

（　）12. You can never imagine what great difficulty I have _____ maths.（2004）

A．learned　B．learning　C．to learn　D．for learning

（　）13. _____ form the space, our earth, with water covering 70% of its surface, appears as a “blue planet”.（2005）

A．Seen　B．Seeing　C．Having seen　D．To see

（　）14. There was a terrible noise _____ the sudden burst of light.（2005）

A．followed　B．following　C．to be followed　D．being following

（　）15. Please get your blood _____ in the next room.（2005）

A．to be tested　B．tested　C．being tested　D．testing

（　）16. The computer was broken and Tom ___ for it.（2005）

A．has blame　B．has blamed　C．is to blame　D．is blaming

（　）17. Most students in our class feel _____ their duty _____ some good deeds for the public.（2005）

A．that; to do　B．/ ; doing　C．it; to do　D．that; do

（　）18. Did you see Li Ming _____ at the desk _____ something？（2005）

A．sit; read　B．to sit; reading　C．sitting; read　D．sitting; reading

（　）19. I like _____, but don’t like _____ now.（2005）

A．swimming; swimming　B．swimming; to swim

C．to swim; swimming　D．to swim; to swim

（　）20. Tom did nothing but _____down for a rest.（2005）

A．lay　B．lie　C．to lay　D．to lie

（　）21. The teacher asked the students _____ any noise in class.（2006）

A．don’t make　B. not making　C．not to make　D．to not make

（　）22. _____, they went to the playground.（2006）

A．Their homework finished　B．Their homework was finished

C．Their homework being finished　D．Their homework had been finished

（　）23. The washing machines needs _____.（2007）

A．repairing　B．to repair　C．to repaired　D．to be repairing

（　）24. In Kiruna visitors can join in outdoor activities such as riding on sleds _____ by dogs and skiing.（2007）

A．pull　B．pulled　C．are pulled　D．pulling

（　）25. As we joined the big crowds, I got _____ from my friends.（2007）

A．missed　B．lost　C．separated　D．spared

（　）26. Why have they delayed _____ the new school?（2007）

A．to open　B．to opening　C．to be opening　D．opening

（　）27. He wants _____ by the name Mickey.（2008）

A．to call　B．to be called　C．to be calling　D．be calling

（　）28. He went on with his speech and didn’t notice the ____ look on her face.（2009）

A．disappointedly　　B．disappoint
C．disappointed　　D．disappointment

（　）29. It's hard to imagine what great difficulty I have ____ my English.（2009）
A．improved　　B．improve
C．to improve　　D．improving

（　）30. ____ more time, we could have done it better.（2009）
A．Give　　B．Given　　C．Giving　　D．Gave

（　）31. Jack has been teaching for twenty years and he is an ____ teacher.（2009）
A．experiencing　B．experience　　C．experienced　　D．experiences

（　）32. Our teacher looked very ____ today. Can you tell me why?（2009）
A．exciting　　B．excitedly　　C．excited　　D．excite

（　）33. Mary concentrated on ____ a novel with all the noise ____ on.（2010）
A．reading; went　　B．read; to go
C．reading; going　　D．read; going

（　）34. It's no use ____ Daddy for help. He has been away on business.（2010）
A．ask　　B．asks　　C．to ask　　D．asking

（　）35. He will have no choice but ____ the teacher's advice.（2010）
A．following　　B．follow　　C．follows　　D．to follow

（　）36. The question ____ seems very complicated.（2010）
A．been discussed　　B．being discussed
C．discusses　　D．discuss

（　）37. The play ____ next month will mainly reflect the local culture.（2010）
A．put on　　B．to be put on　　C．being put on　　D．having been put on

（　）38. _____ iron, the machine weighs 600 kilos.（2011）
A．Have made of　　B．Making of
C．To be made of　　D．Made of

（　）39. It is no use _____ with a man like him.（2011）
A．being argued　　B．argued
C．arguing　　D．argues

（　）40. _____ delicious, the food was sold out soon.（2011）
A．Tasting　　B．Tasted
C．Being tasted　　D．To taste

（　）41. With a lot of homework _____, little Tom felt worried all the time.（2011）
A．did　　B．to do　　C．do　　D．doing

（　）42. I have a lot of reading tasks _____ this weekend.（2012）
A．completing　　B．to complete
C．completed　　D．being completed

（　）43. _____ alone in the house, the little girl had to cook dinner for herself.（2012）

A．To leave　B．Leaving　C．Left　D．Leaves

（　）44. We'll see you after the concert, time _____.（2013）

A．permitting　B．permit　C．to permit　D．permits

（　）45. — Good morning. Can I help you, madam?

— I'd like to have the apples _____.（2013）

A．be weighed　B．to be weighed

C．weighed　D．to weigh

（　）46. _____ too much coffee at night may not be very good for your health.（2013）

A．Drink　B．Drinks　C．Being drunk　D．Drinking

（　）47. As a young singer, he didn't know that he _____ famous later on.（2013）

A．was to become　B．will become

C．had become　D．become

（　）48. The purpose of the new technology is to make life easier, _____ it more difficult.（2013）

A．not to make　B．not make

C．to not make　D．do not make

（　）49. Do you mind _____ in the extra hours in your company?（2015）

A．puts　B.put　C.to put　D.putting

四、情态动词

要求 掌握情态动词的基本用法；掌握情态动词表示推测、责任、祝愿、请求等的用法；掌握"情态动词 + have done"的用法；掌握情态动词 dare，need 和实义动词 dare，need 的区别。

讲解

1. 情态动词表示能力

can 现在能；could 过去能；be able to 能（多种时态）

was / were able to（在过去）设法完成了（= managed to do = succeeded in doing）

★ I can climb over the wall.

★ He was able to escape from the big fire.

2. 情态动词表示推测

（1）肯定句：must "一定"，语气最肯定；can "有时可能"，语气肯定；could "可能"，语气不太确定；may，might 语气最不肯定。

★ Your mother must be waiting for you now. 你妈妈现在一定正在等你。

★ The thought that he might fail in the exam worried him.

（2）否定句：can't / couldn't 不可能；may not / might not 可能不。

疑问句：can / could 表示惊讶、怀疑等，"可能吗？"。

★ — Who is knocking at the door? Can it be Mr. Wang?　谁在敲门？可能是王老师吗？
— No, it can't be him. It may be Miss Liu.　不，不可能是他。一定是刘老师。

3. 情态动词表示责任、祝愿、请求等

（1）must do / have to do 必须做；don't have to do / don't need to do / needn't do 不必做；should do 应该做；shouldn't do 不该做；mustn't do sth.　禁止、不准做某事。

（2）May you succeed!　祝你成功！

（3）May / Can / Could / Might I…? Will / Would you…?
Could / Might I…？Would you？表示委婉的请求，肯定答语用 can / will，不用 could / would。

★ — Can（Could / May）I go now?
★ — Yes, you can. / No, you can't. / No, I'm afraid not.

（4）Shall I / he / we…?　要不要我 / 他 / 我们……?
You'd better（not）do…　你最好（不要）做……

★ — Shall I get you a cup of tea?
— Thank you. That's kind of you!

4. 情态动词 + have done

（1）must have done（在过去）一定做过……；may / might have done（过去）也许做过……
→否定：can't / couldn't have done（在过去）不可能做过

★ He must have met her yesterday, didn't he?
★ He must have met her, hasn't he?
★ He can't / couldn't have seen me yesterday because I wasn't there.

（2）should have done = ought to have done　本该做
→否定：shouldn't have done = oughtn't to have done　本不该做

★ You shouldn't have come here yesterday.
★ She should have practiced typing enough in school.

（3）needn't have done（过去）本不必做

★ We needn't have waited for him.

5. dare 情态动词，一般用否定 daren't do；实义动词 dare (s) to do，don't / doesn't / didn't dare to do need 情态动词，一般用否定 needn't do；实义动词 need to do，don't / doesn't / didn't need to do

★ I dare to swim across this river.
★ He doesn't dare to answer the question.
★ He needs to finish his homework today.
★ — Need I finish the work today?
— Yes, you must. / No, you needn't. / No, you don't have to.

6. used to do 过去常干而现在不干了

★ He used to smoke a lot. Now he has given it up.

★ — Do you smoke? — No. But I used to.

为了避免重复，动词不定式常保留不定式符号 to，省略 to 之后的内容。但若 to 后为 be 或 have 动词，则保留 be 或 have。

★ — Are you on the school football team? — No. But I used to be.

样题

样题 1. My MP4 player isn't in my bag. Where _____ I have put it?

A. can　　B. must　　C. should　　D. would

【分析】选择 A。考查 can 在疑问句中表示推测的用法。句意为"我可能把它放在什么地方呢？"

样题 2. You _____ park here! It's an emergency exit.

A. wouldn't　　B. needn't　　C. couldn't　　D. mustn't

【分析】选择 D。考查 mustn't 禁止，不准。句意为"你不准把车停在这里！这是一个紧急出口。"

练习一

(　) 1. You _____ buy a gift, but you can if you want to.

A. must　　B. mustn't　　C. have to　　D. don't have to

(　) 2. — _____ I take the book out?

— I'm afraid not.

A. Will　　B. May　　C. Must　　D. Need

(　) 3. — Good morning. I've got an appointment with Miss Smith in the Personnel Department.

— Ah, good morning. You _____ be Mrs. Peters.

A. might　　B. must　　C. would　　D. can

(　) 4. — What's your name?

— Agegalami. _____ I spell that for you?

A. Shall　　B. Would　　C. Can　　D. Might

(　) 5. I _____ have watched that movie — it'll give me horrible dreams.

A. shouldn't　　B. needn't　　C. couldn't　　D. mustn't

(　) 6. John said you _____ go to help him. He could do it by himself.

A. needn't　　B. didn't need　　C. needn't to　　D. needed not

(　) 7. — Tom is never late for work. Why is he absent today?

— Something _____ to him.

A. must happen　　B. should have happened

C. could have happened　　D. must have happened

（　）8. — I'll tell Mary about her new job tomorrow.
— You _____ her last week.
A. ought to tell　　B. would have told
C. must tell　　D. should have told

（　）9. He was not brave. He _____ jump down from a very tall wall.
A. dare not　B. dared not　C. dares not　D. dare not to

（　）10. — May I take this book out of the reading room?
— No, you _____. You read it in here.
A. mightn't　B. won't　C. needn't　D. mustn't

（　）11. I'm afraid Mr. Smith _____ see you now. He's busy.
A. can't　B. mustn't　C. shouldn't　D. needn't

（　）12. — Excuse me. Is this the right way to the Summer Palace?
— Sorry, I am not sure. But it_____be.
A. might　B. will　C. must　D. can

（　）13. You can telephone us, you _____ come here yourself.
A. need to　B. don't need　C. needn't to　D. don't need to

（　）14. He _____ a walk after supper, but now he _____ in the sofa.
A. is used to have; is used to lie　B. is used to having; is used to lie
C. used to have; is used to lying　D. used to having; is used to laying

（　）15. You have been coughing these days. You had better _____ the habit of smoking.
A. get out of　B. to get out of　C. not to give up　D. not give up

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“情态动词”高考真题。

（　）1. Mike, you _____ play in the street. It's very dangerous.（2001）
A. mustn't　B. may not　C. couldn't　D. needn't

（　）2. — I let the child go alone and he got lost.
— You _____ with him.（2002）
A. should go　　B. should have gone
C. must go　　D. would have gone

（　）3. — Must I finish the exercise this afternoon?
— Yes, you_____, but you _____finish it now.（2003）
A. must; mustn't　　B. must; don't have to
C. may; needn't　　D. may; mustn't

（　）4. He had been knocking at the door for a long time, but on one came to open it. He said to himself, "No one _____ indoors."（2004）
A. must have been　　B. will be
C. can be　　D. should have been

（　）5. Look! The road is wet. It _____ last night.（2005）

A．must rain　B．rains　C．might rain　D．must have rained

（　）6. Tom told John that he _____ to see a doctor about his stomach.（2008）

A．should　B．ought　C．might　D．must

（　）7. — My daughter's score in the mid-term exam is the highest in her class.

— She ____ have studied very hard.（2009）

A．may　B．must　C．should　D．ought to

（　）8. Dad was really anxious about you. You ____ home without a word.（2010）

A．mustn't leave　B．shouldn't have left

C．needn't have left　D．ought not to leave

（　）9. One of the few things you _____ say about English people with certainty is that they talk a lot about the weather.（2010）

A．need　B．must　C．ought　D．can

（　）10. The house is dark and quiet, so the Blacks _____ have gone to bed.（2011）

A．must　B．ought to　C．should　D．would

（　）11. — Must I clean the bathroom now?

— No, you _____.（2012）

A．mustn't　B．may not　C．can't　D．needn't

（　）12. The English speech contest has already begun. You _____ here twenty minutes ago.（2013）

A．could have come　B．could come

C．should have come　D．should come

（　）13. — You'd better hand in your composition before six o'clock.

— _____！It will take me at least three hours to finish it.（2013）

A．I guess so　B．You must be joking

C．No problem　D．That's OK

五、虚拟语气

要求 掌握虚拟语气在状语从句、宾语从句、名词性从句和一些句型中的用法。

讲解

1. 虚拟语气在状语从句中

（1）虚拟语气在非真实条件句中。

★ If he had followed my advice, he wouldn't have lost his job.（与过去事实相反）

★ If I were you, I would buy the bike.（与现在事实相反）

★ If it were to rain（= should rain）tomorrow, we should not go out.（与将来事实相反）

句中的 were / should / had 可用于倒装结构，但 if 必须省略。上面的句子可变为：

★ Had he followed my advice, he wouldn't have lost his job.

★ Were I you, I would buy the bike.

★ Were it to rain（= Should it rain）tomorrow, we should not go out.

（2）虚拟语气在 as if 引导的状语从句中。

★ John pretends as if he didn't know the thing at all.（与现在事实相反）

★ Looking at the picture, the old man felt as though he had gone back to 20 years ago.（与过去事实相反）

★ They talked and talked as if they would never meet again. （与将来事实相反）

（3）虚拟语气在含蓄条件句中，常用 without，but for（要不是），if only（要是……该多好）引导。

★ Without your help, I couldn't have finished my work on time.

★ If only my grandpa could see this together with us now!

★ But for Mr. Deng, we wouldn't be living such a happy life now.

2. 虚拟语气在宾语从句中

（1）虚拟语气在表示建议、命令等动词后（suggest，advise，order，require，request，insist，demand 等）的宾语从句中用（should）do 或（should）be done。

★ He insisted that we（should）put off the meeting.

★ They suggested that all the plans（should）be discussed at the meeting.

suggest 表示“建议”时，从句用（should）do / be done；suggest 表示“表明、暗示”时，则不用虚拟语气。而 insist 表示“坚决要求”时，用（should）do / be done，表示“坚持认为（某种事实）”时不用虚拟语气。

★ His pale face suggested that he was ill. 他苍白的脸表明他病了。

★ He insisted that he was honest. 他坚持认为他是诚实的。

（2）虚拟语气在 wish 后的宾语从句中。

★ I wish they were at home this time.（与现在事实相反）

★ I wish I hadn't hurt him so much.（与过去事实相反）

★ I wish I might be able to come tomorrow.（与将来事实相反）

（3）虚拟语气在 would rather 后的宾语从句中。

★ I would rather that you hadn't told him.（与过去事实相反）

★ John wants to see me today. I would rather he came tomorrow.（与将来事实相反）

★ I would rather I were you.（与现在事实相反）

3. 虚拟语气在名词性从句中

宾语从句可以和相应的主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句互换，以 suggest 为例：

★ I suggested that he（should）go there at once.（宾语从句）
= I made a suggestion that he（should）go there at once.（同位语从句）

= My suggestion was that he（should）go there at once.（表语从句）
= It is suggested that he（should）go there at once.（主语从句）

4. 句型 It's time（high）that…中，谓语动词用 *v*-ed 或 should do / be done（should 不能省略）。

★ It's time that we took measures to protect our environment.

5. 句型 It's necessary / important / strange that…，谓语动词用（should ）do / be done。

★ It's strange that he（should）say so. 真奇怪，他竟然这么说。

样题

样题 1. She insisted that she _____ really very tired and that she _____ to have a rest.

A. was; be allowed　　B. was; must be allowed
C. be; be allowed　　D. should be; be allowed

【分析】 选择 A。第一格 insist 坚持的是事实，宾语从句受主句影响，用一般过去时。第二格 insist 坚持的是观点，用虚拟语气"（should）+ 动词原形"。

样题 2. It is high time that the government _____ measures to protect the rare birds and animals.

A. takes　　B. took　　C. has taken　　D. taking

【分析】选择 B。句型 It's time that did sth.

练习一

（　）1. I'd rather he _____ me about it yesterday.

A. told　　B. had told　　C. should tell　　D. tells

（　）2. If only the weather _____ fine！

A. be　　B. is　　C. was　　D. were

（　）3. I wish I _____ with her now.

A. would be　　B. am　　C. was　　D. were

（　）4. The picture exhibition bored me to death. I wish I _____ to it.

A. had not gone　　B. have not gone
C. did not go　　D. can not have gone

（　）5. I'd rather you _____ anything about it for the time being（暂时）.

A. do　　B. didn't do　　C. don't　　D. didn't

（　）6. It is time that you _____ home and I'd rather you _____ again tomorrow.

A. would go; would come　　B. went; came
C. go; are going　　D. are going; will come

（　）7. John is so strongly built that he looks as if he _____ an elephant.

A. lifts　　B. is lifting　　C. lifted　　D. could lift

（　）8. It is required that the money _____ paid immediately.
A．will be　　B．must be　　C．be　　D．is

（　）9. I wish I _____ what to do.
A．know　　B．knew　　C．have known　　D．would know

（　）10. She insisted that she _____ really very tired and that she _____ to have a rest.
A．was; be allowed　　B．was; must be allowed
C．be; be allowed　　D．should be; be allowed

（　）11. I would buy that bicycle, if I _____ enough money.
A．will have　　B．have　　C．had had　　D．had

（　）12. John wished _____.
A．he will study more　　B．he had studied more
C．he studies　　D．he won't have studied more

（　）13. I can't stand him. He always talks as though he _____ everything.
A．knew　　B．knows　　C．has known　　D．had known

（　）14._____ my advice, you would have caught the bus .
A．Had you taken　　B．You had taken
C．If you took　　D．If you take

（　）15. My demand is that the information in my report _____ to Mr. Brown without delay.
A．to be e-mailed　　B．e-mailed
C．be e-mailed　　D．being e-mailed

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“虚拟语气”高考真题。

（　）1. You are so beautiful and clever. How I wish I _____ you!（2002）
A．am　　B．were　　C．be　　D．will be

（　）2. — My goodness, I just missed the train.
— That's too bad, but if you had hurried, you ____ it.（2005）
A．could have caught　　B．had caught
C．would catch　　D．could catch

（　）3. It is suggested that more modern science and technology _____ textbooks.（2006）
A．added to　　B．be added to
C．is added to　　D．are added to

（　）4. It was decided that a day of thanksgiving to God _____ fixed.（2007）
A．was　　B．is　　C．be　　D．are

（　）5. _____ my advice, you would have got the tickets for the Cup Final.（2011）
A．Had you taken　　B．You had taken
C．If you take　　D．If you have taken

（　）6. John's face looked so pale, and his doctor suggested that he _____ a medical examination.（2012）

A．would have　　B．have
C．had　　D．has

（　）7._____ I you, I would accept the terms and conditions of the employment.（2013）
A．Were　　B．Be　　C．Am　　D．Are

（　）8. “Bathtub effect” means people remember the beginnings and ends of words better than the middles, as if the word _____ a person _____ in a bathtuB.
A. were; lay　　B. is; lay　　C. were; lying　　D. is; lying

六、主谓一致

要求 掌握主谓一致的三个原则：就近一致、就远一致（即靠前原则）、语法一致。

讲解

主谓一致指的是主语和谓语在人称和数方面取得一致。

1. 就近一致：指谓语动词在人称和数上与最靠近的主语保持一致

（1）当 not only…but also…，neither…nor…，or，either…or…，not…but…等连接两个并列的主语时，就近一致。

★ Not the teacher but the students are watching the TV play.
★ Not only the students but also the teacher is watching the TV play.
★ Either he or I am right.

（2）句子开头是副词 here / there，就近一致。

★ Here comes the bus.
★ There is an apple, two bananas and some oranges on the plates.

2. 就远一致（即靠前原则）

当主语的结构为“A + with，together with，along with，except，besides，but，as well as，like，rather than，including 等 + B”时，谓语动词单复数根据 A 而定。

★ The teacher, with his students, is going to have a picnic this weekend.
★ The students, together with their teacher, are going to have a picnic this weekend.
★ A and B 或 both A and B 作主语时，谓语动词一般用复数。但若 A and B 指同一个人或物时，谓语动词用单数。另外，and 连接的并列单数主语前如果有 no，each，every 时，谓语动词用单数。
★ The dancer and singer likes reading. 那位舞蹈演员兼歌唱演员喜欢阅读。（一个人）
★ The dancer and the singer like reading. 那位舞蹈演员和那个歌唱演员喜欢阅读。（两个人）
★ Every boy and every girl is to attend the meeting.

3. 语法一致

（1）“the + 形容词”，表示一类人时，谓语动词用复数；表示抽象概念时，谓语动词用单数。

★ The old always consider the young inexperienced. 老年人（泛指一类人）总认为年轻人没经验。

区别：

★ The old man always considers the young man inexperienced. 这个老人总认为这个年轻人没经验。

★ The beautiful gives pleasure to all.

（2）trousers，glasses，scissors，shoes，shorts 等作主语时，谓语动词用复数，但如果这些名词前有 a / the pair of 等量词修饰时，谓语动词用单数。

★ The trousers that you bought yesterday are too short for me.

★ This pair of shoes doesn't fit me.

（3）动词不定式短语、动名词短语或从句作主语时，谓语动词一般用单数形式。但由 what / who / which 引导的主语从句，若表语是复数，则谓语动词用复数形式。

★ Getting up early is a good habit.

★ What he needs is money.

★ What he gave me are five comic books.

（4）集体名词 police，class，family，committee，club，crowd，group，team 等指整体时，谓语动词用单数；指个体成员时，谓语动词用复数。

★ The class has won the honor.

★ The class are jumping for joy.

（5）many a / more than one + 单数可数名词，谓语动词用单数。

★ Many a student is busy with their lessons.
= Many students are busy with their lessons.

（6）the number of …作主语时，谓语动词用单数。a（large / great）number of …作主语时，谓语动词用复数。

★ The number of mistakes in those books is surprising.

★ A number of mistakes in those books are often found by students.

★ The amount of money he spent last year is small.

★ A large amount of money has been spent by him on books.

★ Large amounts of money have been spent by him on books.

样题

样题 1. The old _____ well looked after by the government in China.

A．is　　B．are　　C．has been　　D．was

【分析】选择 B。the old 指老年人，复数。

样题 2. Tom as well as two of his classmates _____ invited to the party.

A．was　　B．were　　C．have been　　D．had been

【分析】选择 A。本句主语结构是 A as well as B，中心词是 Tom，靠前原则，谓语用单数。

练习一

（ ）1. The whole class _____ the teacher attentively.
A．are listening to　　B．is listening to
C．are listening　　D．is listening

（ ）2. It's reported that _____ of the people in China _____ women.
A．third-fifth; is　　B．three-fifths; is
C．three-fifth; are　　D．three-fifths; are

（ ）3. A library with five thousand books ____ to the nation as a gift.
A．is offered　　B．has offered
C．are offered　　D．have offered

（ ）4. When and where to go _____ not yet known.
A．are　　B．has　　C．have　　D．is

（ ）5. — Why are you so happy today?
— Our women football team _____ the Brazil's in the semifinals（半决赛）.
A．has won　　B．have gained　　C．has beaten　　D．have defeated

（ ）6. That pair of new shoes _____ under my bed.
A．is　　B．are　　C．has　　D．have

（ ）7. Either you or I _____ going to the teachers' office after class.
A．am　　B．is　　C．are　　D．will

（ ）8. About 20 percent of the work ____ done yesterday.
A．are　　B．is　　C．were　　D．was

（ ）9. Not only Tom but also his wife ____ fond of watching television.
A．are　　B．were　　C．be　　D．is

（ ）10. A number of students _____ from the south.
A．are　　B．is　　C．have　　D．has

（ ）11. John has two brothers, but either ____ out of work now.
A．are　　B．is　　C．has　　D．have

（ ）12. Books of this kind _____ well.
A．sell　　B．sells　　C．is sold　　D．are sold

（ ）13. It was reported that six _____ including a boy.
A．had killed　　B．was killing　　C．were killed　　D．was killed

（ ）14. Your new clothes fit you, but mine _____ me.
A．don't fit for　　B．doesn't fit for
C．don't fit　　D．doesn't fit

（ ）15. Each student ____ got an English- Chinese dictionary. The students each ____ a dictionary.
A．have; has　　B．has; have　　C．have; have　　D．has; has

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“主谓一致”高考真题。

（　）1. Neither his parents nor Tom _____ to China.（2001）

A．has been　　B．have been

C．has never been　　D．have never been

（　）2. E-mail, as well as telephones, _____ widely in daily life.（2002）

A．is being used　　B．have used

C．are being used　　D．were used

（　）3. The number of the teachers in our school _____ every year.（2004）

A．change　　B．changes

C．has changed　　D．are changed

（　）4. The Green's family, which _____ rather a larger one, ____ very fond of their old house.（2005）

A．were; were　　B．was; were

C．were; was　　D．was; was

（　）5. The manager together with his two secretaries _____ for Hong Kong to attend a meeting there.（2006）

A．leave　　B．leaves　　C．to leave　　D．is leaving

（　）6. Our football team _____ 18 players, a coach and a doctor.（2006）

A．is made up of　　B．are made up of

C．make up of　　D．made up of

（　）7._____ the bedroom needs to be cleaned.（2007）

A．Either the classrooms or　　B．The classrooms and

C．Both the classrooms and　　D．The classrooms nor

（　）8. Not only Tom but also Mary and Smith _____ from America.（2008）

A．are　　B．is　　C．be　　D．to be

（　）9. One-fifth of the new students _____ from foreign countries in our school this term.（2009）

A．is　　B．was　　C．are　　D．be

（　）10. Not only the students but also the teacher _____ the campaign.（2009）

A．support　　B．supports　　C．supporting　　D．to support

（　）11. Early to bed and early to rise _____ you healthy, wealthy and wise.（2010）

A．makes　　B．make　　C．made　　D．to make

（　）12. The number of the spelling mistakes in your composition _____ surprising.（2011）

A．being　　B．are　　C．be　　D．is

（　）13. Look, not only the students but also their teacher _____ enjoying the science-fiction movie *Transformers*.（2012）

A．is　　B. are　　C．was　　D．were

（　）14. Linda, together with her parents, _____ spending the holiday in China when the strong earthquake happened.（2012）

A．was　　B．were　　C．is　　D．are

（　）15. Everyone except the twins _____ there when the party began.（2014）

A．are　　B．is　　C．were　　D．was

（　）16. The price of my trousers _____ reasonable, so I think it's a bargain.（2015）

A．is　　B.are　　C.am　　D.be

动词部分综合练习

（　）1. Edward, you play so well. But I _____ you played the piano.

A．didn't know　　B．hadn't known

C．don't know　　D．haven't known

（　）2. His book was published, _____ made him _____ the whole country.

A．that; know　　B．which; known of

C．which; known to　　D．it; known by

（　）3. Bob's doctor suggests _____ for a few weeks.

A．that he is resting　　B．he rest

C．he resting　　D．him to rest

（　）4. They would not allow him _____ across the enemy line.

A．to risk going　　B．risking to go

C．for risk to go　　D．risk going

（　）5. This problem is said _____ three times.

A．to have been talked　　B．to have discussed

C．having been discussed　　D．to have been talked about

（　）6._____ many times, he still couldn't understand.

A．Having been told　　B．Having told

C．He having been told　　D．Telling

（　）7. The young girl sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. She _____ before.

A．hasn't flown　　B．didn't fly

C．hadn't flown　　D. wasn't flown

（　）8. The library's study room is full of students _____ for the exam.

A．busily prepared　　B．busy preparing

C．busily prepare　　D．are busily preparing

（　）9. Prices of daily goods _____ through a computer can be lower than store prices.

A．are bought　　B．bought

C．been bought　　D．buying

（　）10. The river smells well, people must _____ dirty things into it.

A．be stopped to throw　　B．stop to throw

C．be stopped from throwing　　D．stop from throwing

（　）11. No one except my parents _____ anything about it.

A．know　　B. knows　　C．is knowing　　D．have known

（　）12. Nothing but cars _____ in the shop.
A．are going to sell　　B．were sold
C．are sold　　D．is sold

（　）13. There are two roads and either _____ to the station.
A．is leading　　B．are leading
C．lead　　D．leads

（　）14. — If he _____, he _____ that food.
— Luckily he was sent to the hospital immediately.
A．was warned; would not take　　B．had been warned; would not have taken
C．would be warned; had not taken　　D．would have been warned; had not taken

（　）15. The flowers were so lovely that they _____ in no time.
A．sold　　B．had been sold
C．were sold　　D．would sell

（　）16. _____ with so much trouble, we failed to complete the task on time.
A．Faced　　B．Face　　C．Facing　　D．To face

（　）17. Taking exercise every day will ____ your body.
A．make up　　B．take up　　C．build up　　D．put up

（　）18. Laying eggs _____ the ant queen's full-time job.
A．have　　B．has　　C．are　　D．is

（　）19. You _____ her in her office last Friday, she's been out of town for two weeks.
A．needn't have seen　　B．must have seen
C．might have seen　　D．can't have seen

（　）20. With much work to do, he _____ to the cinema last night.
A．mustn't　　B．oughtn't to go
C．wouldn't go　　D．shouldn't have gone

（　）21. The boy is reported to _____ his family for four years since his father's death.
A．support　　B．has supported
C．be supporting　　D．have been supporting

（　）22. Will you _____ that customer, please?
A．see　　B．attend to　　C．look　　D．look for

（　）23. Tired of the noise, _____.
A．the door shut　　B．he shut the door
C．the door was shut　　D．the door being shut

（　）24. We can't ____ the car. There _____ something wrong with the engine.
A．drive; must be　　B．start; must be
C．start; has　　D．begin; must have

（　）25. He _____ to lend me a hand, but I refused, for I didn't want to trouble him.
A．failed　　B．offered　　C．insisted　　D．thought

（　）26. Unless_____ to speak, you should remain silent at the conference.

A．invited　B. inviting　C．being invited　D．having invited

（　）27. We are invited to a party _____ in our club next Friday.

A．to be held　B．held　C．being held　D．holding

（　）28. _____ the project in time, the staff were working at weekends.

A．Competing　B．Having completed

C．To have completed　D．To complete

（　）29. ____ many times,but he made the same mistake again.

A．Having been told　B．Although he had been told

C．He had been told　D．Having told

（　）30. Mr. Smith, ____ of the ____ speech, started to read a novel.

A．tired; boring　B．tiring; bored　C．tired; bored　D．tiring; boring

复合句

一、主从复合句

主从复合句也叫从属复合句，由一个主句和一个或一个以上的从句构成。主句是句子的主体，从句是句子的一个成分，不能独立使用。主从复合句包括定语从句、状语从句和名词性从句。

1. 定语从句

要求

1. 掌握定语从句中关系代词、关系副词的基本用法及其辨析。
2. 掌握关系代词只用 that 或只用 which 的情况。
3. 掌握“介词 + 关系代词”的定语从句。
4. 掌握限制性定语从句、非限制性定语从句的区别。
5. 区别强调句与定语从句、同位语从句与定语从句。

讲解

在句中修饰名词、代词或整个句子的从句叫定语从句。定语从句所修饰的名词叫先行词，引导定语从句的词叫关系词。关系词分为关系代词和关系副词。定语从句分为限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句。非限制性定语从句有逗号将主句和从句隔开。

（1）关系代词

that	指人或物，作主语或宾语
which	指物，作主语或宾语；或指代整个句子
who	指人，作主语
whose	指人或物的，作定语
as	指“人的”或“物的”，作主语、宾语、表语；或指代整个句子
whom	指人，作宾语

① 当关系代词在定语从句中作主语时，不可省略；关系代词在限制性定语从句中作宾语时，可以省略。如果介词提前到关系代词前，指人一般用 whom，指物一般用 which，而且不可省略。有些固定搭配中的介词不可提前，比如 look after.

★ The man（whom / that）my father is talking to is my English teacher.
= The man to whom my father is talking is my English teacher.
★ I live in the room whose door is red.　= I live in the room, the door of which is red.
= I live in the room, of which the door is red.
★ I don't like the way in which（that / 不填）he talks to his mother.
★ Is this factory the one you visited 10 years ago?
★ Is this the factory { (which / that) you worked in? / in which you worked? / where you worked?

② as / which 引导非限制性定语从句时，as 引导的从句可放在主句之前或后，但 which 引导的从句只能放主句之后。which 可以指代前面句子的内容。

★ As we all know, Taiwan belongs to China.
★ He passed the examination, as / which we had expected.
★ Taiwan belongs to China, as / which is known to all.

as 常和 such 结合：

★ He is such a boy as we like.
★ I have never seen such people as we saw at the party.

（2）关系副词

where　指地点，作地点状语，相当于 in / at which
when　指时间，作时间状语，相当于 on / at / during which
why　指原因，作原因状语，相当于 for which

关系副词 = 介词 + 关系代词，具体用什么介词根据句意来定。

★ I'll never forget the day { when he joined the army. / on which he joined the army. / (which / that) he joined the army on.
★ I'll never forget the day （which / that）we spent in Beijing.
★ This is the village { where I was born. / in which I was born. / (which / that) I was born in.
★ This is the village（which / that）I visited last week.
★ I don't know the reason { why he didn't attend the meeting. / for which he didn't attend the meeting.
★ I don't know the reason（which / that）Tom told you just now.

（3）区别强调句型与定语从句

★ It was in this street that I happened to meet him yesterday.（强调句型，去掉 It was…that…，句子仍然完整。）

★ It was this street where I happened to meet him yesterday.（定语从句，where 关系副词。）

（4）区别定语从句与名词性从句

如果从句是对前面的名词（如 fact，idea，plan，suggestion，news 等）作解释，即为名词性从句；如果从句只是对前面的名词起修饰作用，即为定语从句。

★ We all have heard the news that our team won（同位语从句，that 不省略）

★ We don't believe the news（that / which）he told us yesterday.（定语从句）

（5）区别定语从句与并列句

如果两个分句间有 and，but 等并列连词，就是并列句，这时后一分句常用人称代词或 it，that，them 等。如果是定语从句，就要用关系词。

★ He has two sons and both of them are teachers.（并列句）

★ He has two sons,
- both of whom are teachers.（定语从句）
- neither of whom is a teacher.
- one of whom is a teacher.
- either of whom is a teacher.

（6）区别限制性和非限制性定语从句

限制性定语从句对先行词起修饰作用，如果去掉，句子意思不完整。非限制性定语从句，对先行词补充说明，去掉以后，句子意思仍然完整。

★ I was the only person who was invited to the party.

★ He has a daughter, who is a nurse.

★ The house（which / that）he bought yesterday is in the west of the town.

★ The house, which he bought yesterday, is in the west of the town.（which 不可省）

（7）不用 which 只用 that 的情况

① 先行词被序数词或形容词的最高级修饰。

★ The first place（that）we visited was the Great Wall.

★ This is one of the best films that have been shown this year.

②先行词既有人又有物。

★ We talked about the people and the villages（that）we remembered.

③ 先行词被 the very，the only，the just 等修饰时。

★ The only thing（that）we could do was to wait.

④ 先行词是不定代词 anything，anybody，something，all，few，little 等时。

★ Finally, the thief handed everything（that）he had stolen to the police.

★ I will tell him all（that）you told me. = I will tell him what you told me.

⑤ 避免重复。

★ Who is the man that is standing by the door?

样题

样题 1. Yesterday was one of the coldest days _____ I have ever known.

A．which　　B．when　　C．who　　D．that

【分析】选择 D。先行词有形容词的最高级修饰时用关系代词 that。

样题 2. I still remember the day _____ I joined the army.

A．that　　B．which　　C．when　　D．in which

【分析】选择 C。先行词 the day 表示时间，在从句中作状语，可用 when 或 on which 引导。

样题 3. ____ has been announced, we shall have our final exams next week.

A．Which　　B．It　　C．What　　D．As

【分析】选择 D。as 引导定语从句，“正如”，可放句首。

练习一

（　）1. Is there anyone in your class _____ family is in the country?

A．who　　B．who’s　　C．which　　D．whose

（　）2. I’m interested in _____ you have said.

A．all that　　B．all what　　C．that　　D．which

（　）3. He talked a lot about things and persons _____ they remembered in the school.

A．which　　B．that　　C．whom　　D．what

（　）4. In our factory there are 2,000 workers, two thirds of ____ are women.

A．them　　B．which　　C．whom　　D．who

（　）5. You’re the only person _____ I’ve ever met _____ could do it.

A．who; /　　B．/ ; whom　　C．whom; /　　D．/ ; who

（　）6. The way _____ he looks at problems is wrong.

A．which　　B．whose　　C．what　　D．/

（　）7. The reason _____ he didn’t come was _____ he was ill.

A．why; that　　B．that; why　　C．for that; that　　D．for which; what

（　）8. My neighbors used to give me a hand in time of trouble, _____ was very kind of them.

A．who　　B．which　　C．that　　D．it

（　）9. Is _____ some German friends visited last week?

A．this school　B．this the school　C．this school one　D．this school where

（　）10. I have bought two ball pens, _____ writes well.

A．none of them　　B．neither of them

C．neither of which　　D．none of which

（　）11. He is the only one of the students _____ the truth.

A．who know　B．who knows　C．that know　D．who are knowing

（　）12. He is one of the students _____ the truth.
A．who know　B．who knows　C．that knows　D．who are knowing

（　）13.Those _____ were not fit for their work could not see the beautiful clothes.
A．who　B．that　C．which　D．whose

（　）14. Anyone _____ fit for his job could see the beautiful clothes.
A．who are　B．who is　C．that　D．who

（　）15. I'm going to visit the factory _____ your brother visited a few years ago.
A．that　B．where　C．in which　D．what

（　）16. I'm going to visit the factory _____ your brother worked a few years ago.
A．that　B．where　C．which　D．what

（　）17. Is this college _____ they went to last year?
A．that　B．which　C．the one　D．the one what

（　）18. I didn't like the way _____ she spoke to me.
A．which　B．/　C．how　D．as

（　）19. On the train I saw a student _____ I thought was your sister.
A．who　B．whom　C．which　D．that

（　）20. This is the reason _____ they are all against the plan.
A．which　B．that　C．why　D．what

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“定语从句”高考真题。

（　）1. That room, the windows _____ are very big, is a reading-room.（2002）
A．of it　B．which　C．of which　D．of that

（　）2. Is that girl _____ you operated on last month?（2003）
A．who　B．the one　C．whom　D．which

（　）3. Disney, _____ first name was Walt, grew up in an ordinary family.（2004）
A．which　B．that　C．whose　D．who

（　）4. _____ was announced, everybody must finish their work before next Tuesday.（2005）
A．It　B．As　C．That　D．Which

（　）5. I don't know ____ to do with the problem _____ they are facing now.（2005）
A．what; what　B．how; /　C．what; /　D．how; that

（　）6. The house, _____, is not large.（2006）
A．he bought last year　B．which he bought it last year
C．he bought it last year　D．which he bought last year

（　）7. I have never seen such people ____ at the party.（2007）
A．when we saw　B．as we saw
C．what we saw　D．who we saw

（　）8. Can you lend me the book ____ you talked yesterday?（2010）
A．with which　B．about which　C．with that　D．about that

（　）9. I was born in New Orleans, a city ____ name will create a picture of beautiful trees and green grass in our mind.（2010）

A．which　　B．that　　C．who　　D．whose

（　）10. I still remember the day ____ our English teacher first wore that red skirt.（2010）

A．when　　B．whether　　C．that　　D．where

（　）11. The professor _____ daughter teaches you English is Dr. Williams.（2011）

A．who　　B．that　　C．his　　D．whose

（　）12. Some roads were flooded, _____ made the journey more difficult.（2011）

A．that　　B．which　　C．where　　D．it

（　）13. In my opinion, anyone _____ breaks the rules of the game should be punished.（2012）

A．that　　B．which　　C．who　　D．whom

（　）14. She often thinks of her good friend, _____ has lived in Hong Kong for three years.（2012）

A．whom　　B．which　　C．who　　D．that

（　）15. There's no reason _____ you should play cards all day along.（2013）

A．who　　B．why　　C．where　　D．whom

（　）16. John is the very person _____ we want to call on.（2013）

A．who　　B．whom　　C．which　　D．that

（　）17. On our way to New York, we visited the Browns, _____ used to be our neighbor.

A．whom　　B.who　　C.which　　D.that

2. 状语从句

要求　掌握 9 种状语从句的用法。

讲解

种　类	连　词
时间状语从句	after, as, before, when, once（一旦）, while, till, until, the moment / minute（一……就）, hardly…when ;no sooner…than, every time / each time
地点状语从句	where, wherever
原因状语从句	because, since, as, now that（既然）
条件状语从句	if, unless, as / so long as（只要）, in case
让步状语从句	as, though, although, no matter…, even if / even though, however…, wh-ever…
结果状语从句	that, so that, so…that, such…that
目的状语从句	so that, in order that
方式状语从句	as, as if, as though
比较状语从句	as…as, not so…as, the more…, the more

（1）no matter + how / wh- 只能引导让步状语从句；wh- + ever 既可引导让步状语从句，又可引导名词性从句。

★ Whoever breaks the law should be punished.
= Whoever breaks the law, he should be punished.
= No matter who breaks the law, he should be punished.

（2）as 引导让步状语从句时，要用倒装结构： *n. / adj. / v. / adv.* + as（= though）+ 主+谓（注意这里的名词前不能加冠词）。“ 尽管…… ”。

★ Child as he is, he can speak English fluently.
★ Hard as he works, he makes little progress.

（3）before 的惯用句型。

It will be + 时间段 + before… 还要过……才……
It won't be + 时间段 + before… 不久就……

★ It will be two years before we meet again. 我们要两年后才能再见面。
★ It won't be long before we meet again. 我们不久就会再见面的。
★ He rushed out before I could stop him. 我还没来得及拦住他，他就冲出去了。

（4）while 引导让步状语从句，意思是“ 虽然 / 尽管 ”。while 并列连词，表示对比，译成“ 而 ”。

★ While I like reading his novels, I don't think he is an honest man.（尽管）
★ I was doing my homework while Eric was playing computer games.（而）

（5）till / until 直到……（句中的动词须是延续性的），not … until …直到某时才……（句中的动词须是一次性的）。

★ I must stay here until the rain stops.
★ The little baby didn't go to bed until his mother came back

Not until + 时间状语（从句）+ 主句（倒装）

★ Not until his mother got home did he go to bed.

It is（was）not until + 时间状语（从句）+ that + 主句（不倒装）

★ It was not until his mother got home that he went to bed.

（6）倍数表达法：请参考“ 小词法 ”中的形容词和副词讲解。

★ This room is three times as big as that one.
= This room is twice bigger than that one.
= This room is three times the size of that one.

（7）as soon as，the moment，the minute，no sooner… than…，hardly / scarcely…when…一……就……。

★ Hardly had I got home when it began to rain.
★ No sooner had he took off his sunglasses than I recognized him.

★ The moment they heard the news, they jumped with joy.

（8）在时间状语从句、条件状语从句中，常用一般现在时代替一般将来时。

★ I don't know if / whether he will come tomorrow. It he comes, please tell me.

（9）despite 和 in spite of 也有让步意义，后接名词或动词，而 though，although 是连词，后接从句。

★ He went on working despite the heavy rain / in spite of the heavy rain.
★ Though / Although it was raining hard,（yet / still）he went on working.

although / though 可以与 yet，still 连用，但不能和 but 连用。

as / though（尽管），从句须倒装。

★ Successful as he is, he lives a simple life.

（10）“ 如此……以致…… ”。

so + 形容词 / 副词 + that 从句

such + a / an + 形容词 + 单数可数名词 + that 从句 = so + 形容词 + a / an + 单数可数名词+ that 从句 such + 形容词 + 复数可数名词 / 不可数名词 + that 从句

★ He is such a clever boy that we all like him.
★ He is so clever a boy that we all like him.
★ The boy is so clever that we all like him.

一般来说，such 修饰名词，so 修饰形容词或副词，但是，当其后为 many，few，much，little 表示 “ 多，少 ” 时，只用 so。

★ It's impossible for so few people to look after so many children.
★ There are so many little sheep in the field, so there is so little grass to be left.

（11）every time / each time，next time，the first time，any time 等，表 “ 每次…… ”，“ 下次…… ”，“ 第一次…… ”，“ 任何时候 ” 等。

★ Every time I come home, I will have a wonderful dinner.
★ You can call me any time you want to.

样题

样题 1. _____, it was finished in time.

A．As the work was difficult　　B．Difficult as the work was
C．Difficult as was the work　　D．As was the work difficult

【分析】选择 B。as 尽管，倒装结构：adj + as（= though ）+ 主 + 谓。

样题 2. _____ we fail, we _____ trying.

A．Even if; will not stop　　B．Even though; will stop
C．Even; will not stop　　D．Even if; will not stop to

【分析】选择 A。even if 即使，stop doing 停止做某事。

样题 3. If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, _____ great it is.

A．what　　B．how　　C．however　　D．whatever

【分析】选择C。however great it is 无论困难多大。相当于 no matter how great it is。

练习一

（　）1. — Did you remember to give Mary the money you owed her?

— Yes. I gave it to her ____ I saw her.

A．while　　B．the moment　　C．suddenly　　D．once

（　）2. It seems as if it _____ spring already.

A．will be　　B．would be　　C．is going to be　　D．were

（　）3. _____ there is a will, there is a way.

A．when　　B．which　　C．where　　D．what

（　）4. The foreigner spoke _____ we could hardly catch his words.

A．such fast that　　B．so fast

C．so fast that　　D．so fastly that

（　）5. — What was the party like?

— Wonderful. It's years _____ I enjoyed myself so much.

A．after　　B．before　　C．when　　D．since

（　）6. Please call my secretary to arrange a meeting tomorrow morning, or _____ it is convenient to you.

A．whenever　　B．however　　C．whichever　　D．wherever

（　）7. Mike thinks it won't be long _____ he is ready for his new job.

A．when　　B．after　　C．before　　D．since

（　）8. I always take something to read when I go to the doctor's _____ I have to wait.

A．so that　　B．in order　　C．as if　　D．in case

（　）9. Don't worry. _____ it rains, we'll still have a great time.

A .Even if　　B．As though　　C．In case　　D．If only

（　）10. The baby won't go to sleep _____ his mother tells him a story.

A．or　　B．until　　C．once　　D．if

（　）11. _____ I see her, I will give it to her.

A．When　　B．While　　C．The minute　　D．Until

（　）12. _____ the rain has stopped, let's continue to work.

A．For　　B．Now that　　C．That　　D．Because

（　）13. If you are traveling _____ the customs are really foreign to your own, please do as the Romans do.

A．in which　　B．what　　C．when　　D．where

（　）14. You will catch cold _____ put on more clothes.

A．if you　　B．if you will not　　C．unless you　　D．until you

（　）15. One's life has value _____ one brings value to the life of others.
A．so that　　B．no matter how　　C．as long as　　D．except that

（　）16. _____ hard she tries, she can hardly avoid making mistakes in her homework.
A．While　　B．However　　C．As　　D．Although

（　）17. She always takes careful notes in class _____ she may review them from time to time.
A．so as to　　B．in order that　　C．because of　　D．rather than

（　）18. _____ you try, you'll never lose your English accent.
A．No matter what　　B．How hard
C．No matter how hard　　D．Whatever hard

（　）19. Father was _____ busy in working _____ he often forgot rest or meals.
A．very; that　　B．so; that　　C．such; as　　D．enough; as

（　）20. _____ he woke _____ slept, this subject was always in his mind.
A．If; and　　B．Both; and　　C．Either; or　　D．Whether; or

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“状语从句”高考真题。

（　）1. I am afraid you can't finish your work in time _____ I help you.（2001）
A．if　　B．unless　　C．since　　D．as

（　）2. _____ may happen, I'll not go against you.（2003）
A．However　　B．Whatever　　C．Wherever　　D．Whoever

（　）3. _____ an engineer, so he knows exactly what to do.（2004）
A．Being　　B．Having been　　C．As　　D．He is

（　）4. It was Sunday _____ we often go fishing.（2004）
A．at which　　B．when　　C．that　　D．in which

（　）5. _____ it has joined the WTO, China is meeting lots of challenges.（2004）
A．Whenever　　B．Unless　　C．For　　D．Now that

（　）6. We'll start off at 7 o'clock _____.（2004）
A．whether she will come or not　　B．if she would like to come or not
C．whether she comes or not　　D．no matter she comes or not

（　）7. _____ you can't ask for a couple of days off, you needn't ____ it again.（2005）
A．Since; do　　B．Now that; doing　　C．When; to do　　D．While; do

（　）8. It's almost five years _____ we saw each other last time.（2005）
A．before　　B．since　　C．after　　D．when

（　）9. One cannot learn a foreign language well _____ he studies hard.（2007）
A．unless　　B．as　　C．if　　D．when

（　）10. How long do you think it will be _____ the computer company develops a new product?（2012）
A．since　　B．when　　C．after　　D．before

（　）11. Try _____ he might, Mike couldn't get the tin open.（2013）

A．as　　B．till　　C．when　　D．if

（　）12. You'd better keep the milk in the fridge _____ it will not go bad.（2013）

A．such that　　B．even if　　C．unless　　D．so that

（　）13. The doctor suggests we'd better not stay in a place _____ somebody is smoking.（2014）

A．that　　B．which　　C．when　　D．where

（　）14. You may use my dictionary _____ you don't keep it too long.（2014）

A．as soon as　　B．as long as　　C．as well as　　D．as far as

（　）15．Children labeled "slow" by IQ tests may end up believing that they are doomed to learn slowly, _____ they could progress more rapidly.（2015）

A.now that　　B.even though　　C.so that　　D.as long as

3．名词性从句

要求 掌握名词性从句中连接词 what，whether，wh-ever，where 等的使用。重点掌握主语从句和宾语从句。

讲解

引导名词性从句的连接词有 who，whose，whom，what，which，when，where，why，how，that，whether，if，as if / as though 等。

（1）宾语从句

① 引导词 that 一般可省略，但是两个 that 引导的从句同时作宾语时，第一个 that 可省略，第二个 that 不能省略。

★ He told me（that）he was a student and that he was good at playing football.

② 引导词 whether 和 if 一般可以互换，但是，宾语从句作介词的宾语或 discuss 的宾语时，用 whether 不用 if。

★ He asked me whether / if I would go abroad.
★ We will discuss whether we will go to Beijing this summer.
★ We're talking about whether we will go on a picnic.

③ 宾语从句，陈述语序。

★ He has made it clear that he will not give in.（it 作形式宾语）

（2）表语从句

在表语从句中，that 一般不省略。表语从句一般用 whether 不用 if 引导。as if / as though 可引导表语从句。

★ The problem is whether we can finish the work in time.
★ The question was who could go there.
★ It looks as if it is going to rain.

（3）主语从句

① 在主语从句中，引导词 that 在句首时没有任何含义，只起连接作用，但不能省略。

★ That he suddenly fell ill last week made us surprised.

② 主语从句置于句首时，可用 whether 不用 if。it 作形式主语、主语从句置于句末时，用 whether 或 if 都可以。

★ Whether they would support us was a problem.

★ It was a problem whether / if they would support us.

★ What we need is money.（主语从句）= All（that）we need is money.（定语从句）

（4）同位语从句

同位语一般位于名词后面，解释或说明该名词的具体内容。如果用 that 引导，则不省略。

★ The fact that he had not said anything surprised everybody.

★ We heard the news that our team had won.

★ The news（that）he told us is exciting.（定语从句）

样题

样题 1. _____ we'll go hiking tomorrow depends on the weather.

A．If　　B．Whether　　C．That　　D．What

【分析】选择 B。whether 位于句首，引导主语从句。

样题 2. He was glad to hear the news ____ his daughter had got the first prize in the competition.

A．who　　B．which　　C．that　　D．whom

【分析】选择 C。that 引导同位语从句，无义，不省。

样题 3. — I prefer shutting myself in and listening to music all day on Sundays.

— That's _____ I don't agree. You should have a more active life .

A．where　　B．how　　C．when　　D．what

【分析】选择 A。where 引导表语从句。

练习一

（　）1. _____ we need money is clear.

A．Whether　　B．That　　C．What　　D．If

（　）2. _____ we will have a holiday is unclear.

A．Whether　　B．That　　C．What　　D．If

（　）3. I don't know _____.

A．what was the matter outside　　B．what the matter outside was

C．what was outside the matter　　D．what was happened outside

（　）4. He doubted _____ she loved him.

A．that　　B．whether　　C．who　　D．of which

() 5. He doesn't doubt _____ she loves him very much.
A. that B. whether C. what D. of which

() 6. He got up late this morning. _____ he was late for school.
A. That's because B. That's why
C. That's reason D. That's the excuse

() 7. I have no idea _____ she will be back.
A. when B. for why C. what D. which

() 8. They want to know _____ do to help us.
A. what they can B. what can they
C. that can they D. that they can

() 9. — Do you remember _____ he came?
— Yes, I do. He came by car.
A. how B. when C. that D. if

() 10. _____ surprised me most was _____.
A. That; that she spoke Japanese so well
B. What; how could she speak Japanese so well
C. What; that she spoke Japanese so well
D. That; why she could speak Japanese so well

() 11. _____ he will be sent to Tibet is decided.
A. Whether B. If C. That D. What

() 12. The English-Chinese dictionary will be given to _____ wins the first prize.
A. who B. whomever C. whoever D. which

() 13. Her success lies in the fact _____ she is co-operative and eager to learn from others.
A. which B. that C. when D. why

() 14. My advice is _____ more trees _____ in front of the building.
A. that; be planted B. that; to be planted
C. whether; will be planted D. if; are planted

() 15. _____ matters most in learning English is enough practice.
A. What B. Why C. Where D. Which

() 16. They want to know _____ do to help us.
A. what can they B. what they can
C. how they can D. how can they

() 17. I got wet all through. _____ I had neither a raincoat nor an umbrella.
A. It's the reason B. That's why
C. There's why D. That's because

() 18. That is all ____ we want to say.
A. what B. that C. which D. whatever

() 19. The reason _____ I have to go is _____ my mother is ill in bed.
A. why; why B. why; because C. why; that D. that; because

（　）20. It was not clear _____ the man hadn't reported the accident sooner.

A．that　　B．how　　C．when　　D．why

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“名词性从句”高考真题。

（　）1. There was something wrong with his car. That's ____ he was late for meeting.（2001）

A．where　　B．what　　C．why　　D．when

（　）2. The doctor asked Edison_____.（2003）

A．what he put mirrors behind the lights for

B．why did he put mirrors behind the lights for

C．why he put mirrors behind the lights for

D．what did he put mirrors behind the lights for

（　）3. To improve our education system is _____ we should do right now.（2004）

A．that　　B．what　　C．why　　D．how

（　）4. _____ is a surprise _____ us all _____ she is still alive.（2005）

A．That; to; that　B. It; to; that　　C．It; for; /　　D．It; by; /

（　）5. The reason for his success is _____ he worked hard.（2005）

A．why　　B．that　　C．because　　D．for

（　）6. You are free to do _____ you like.（2005）

A．which　　B．whatever　　C．no matter what　　D．no matter which

（　）7. _____ there is life on the other planet is unclear.（2006）

A．If　　B．That　　C．As　　D．Whether

（　）8. It doesn't make much difference _____ you go or not.（2008）

A．if　　B．why　　C．weather　　D．whether

（　）9. I have no doubt _____ Tom is the tallest man in our team.（2008）

A．if　　B．whether　　C．that　　D．what

（　）10. Experts say that the reason ____ so many people died in the earthquake is ____ they didn't know how to protect themselves.（2009）

A．why; because　　B．that; that

C．why; that　　D．that; because

（　）11. An idea suddenly came to me _____ I might use the pocket money to buy some flowers for my mother's birthday.（2009）

A．if　　B．when　　C．which　　D．that

（　）12. The boy is so reliable that ____ he recommends will be adopted by the boss.（2010）

A．whenever　B．wherever　　C．whatever　　D．however

（　）13. It ____ no difference to me ____ you like him or not.（2010）

A．makes; whether　　B．makes; if

C．gives; whether　　D．gives; if

（　）14. _____ we'll go hiking tomorrow depends on the weather.（2011）

A．If　　B．Whether　　C．That　　D．What

（　）15. Mr. Sun was glad to hear the news _____ his daughter had got the first prize in the competition.（2011）

A．who　　B．which　　C．that　　D．whom

（　）16. What surprised me most was _____ such a little girl could read newspapers.（2012）

A．whether　　B．if　　C．that　　D．which

（　）17. It doesn't matter _____ you pay by cash or credit card in our gas station.（2013）

A．how　　B．whether　　C．that　　D．what

（　）18. _____ really worries John is that his parents expect too much of him.（2014）

A．This　　B．That　　C．What　　D．Which

二、并列句

要求 掌握常见并列连词、能根据前后句关系使用正确的并列连词。

讲解

由并列连词连接两个或以上的分句构成并列句，并列连词分四类。

(1) 表示平行关系的并列连词：and, both…and…, not only…but also …, neither…nor…, so，neither，nor，when 等。

① Not only…but also…连接两个分句时，前一个分句要倒装，后一个分句不必倒装。Neither…nor…连接两个分句时，前后两个分句都要倒装。

★ Not only did he make a promise, but also he kept it.

★ Neither can I speak French, nor can I write it.

not only… but also…，neither… nor…连接两个主语时，谓语动词的数采用就近原则。

★ Not only the students but also the teacher likes music.

★ Neither he nor I am going to watch the match tonight.

② 当表示前面的内容也适用于另一个人或物时，肯定句用 so 引出一个倒装句，否定句用 neither 或 nor 引出一个倒装句。（请参考“倒装句”的讲解）

★ I can swim, so can my brother. 我会游泳，我兄弟也会。

（区别：— I can swim.　— So you can. 你的确会。）

★ They haven't been to Beijing, neither / nor have we.

③ 由 and 连接的带有条件意味的并列句与分词之间的转换。

★ Use your head, and you'll have an idea.

= Using your head, you'll have an idea.

= If you use you head, you will have an idea.

④ when 常用在以下句型中，这时 when 引导并列分句。when = and at that time

…was / were doing…when（suddenly）…（正在做……这时突然……）
…was / were about to do…when…（正要做……就在那时……）

★ I was walking in the street when a dog came at me.
★ I was about to go out when it began to rain.
★ I was about to go to bed when the telephone rang.

（2）表示转折关系的并列连词：but，yet，however，while 等。

★ He is riding, while his father is walking in the dust.（while 常强调前后句的对比。）
★ He sold his house, yet he always regrets it.
★ It was raining heavily, however, they were working in the field.（however 后常用逗号）

but 引出的并列句，其前一分句前不能再有 although / though 引导，而 yet 则可以。

★ Though it was raining heavily, yet / still they were working in the field.

（3）表示选择关系的并列连词：or，otherwise，either…or…，not…but…等。

★ Are you going to the party, or will you go to the cinema?
★ You can either do it by yourself, or you can ask someone else to do it.
★ Hurry up, otherwise you will miss the early bus.
★ Not he but I am wrong.

（4）表示因果关系的并列连词：for，so，therefore 等。

★ The electric current must have been turned off, for the light went out.
★ He was born in Germany, so he can speak German.
★ You haven't obeyed me, therefore I will not help you again.

for 引导的句子是并列句，只能后置，并用逗号与前面的句子隔开，表示推断性原因，或附带解释、说明前一分句的情况。because 属于从属连词，引导原因状语从句，语气强烈，可置于句首、句中、句末。

★ Because he is ill, he is absent today.
★ He must be ill, for he is absent today.

so 引出的并列句，其前一分句前不能再由 because 引导。

样题

样题 1. We were having a meeting _____ someone broke in.

A．when　　B．if　　C．and　　D．till

【分析】选择 A。 when“就在那时”“这时突然”。常用两种句型：① sb. was doing sth. when…② sb. was about to do sth. when…

样题 2. He likes pop music, _____ I am fond of folk music.

A．while　　B．until　　C．when　　D．before

【分析】选择 A。while 而，表示对比。“他喜欢流行音乐，而我喜欢民间音乐。”

并列句练习

（ ）1. _____ enough time, but I couldn't finish it on time.

A. I was given　　B. Given

C. To be given　　D. Though I was given

（ ）2. I made up my mind to get a seat for the football match _____ it meant standing in a queue all night.

A. as if　　B. as though　　C. even if　　D. whatever

（ ）3. _____ you understand this rule, you'll solve your problems quickly.

A. Once　　B. Unless　　C. As　　D. Until

（ ）4. I was so familiar with her that I recognized her voice _____ I picked up the phone.

A. the moment　B. after　　C. before　　D. while

（ ）5. Stand over there _____ you'll be able to see the painting better .

A. but　　B. till　　C. and　　D. or

（ ）6. Our government has taken some steps to prevent the environmental pollution, _____ it may take some time _____ we get a pure sky again.

A. but; when　　B. and; before　　C. but; before　　D. and; when

（ ）7. The day broke, _____ birds began to sing.

A. since　　B. as　　C. because　　D. for

（ ）8. _____ he has limited technical knowledge, the old worker has a lot of experience .

A. Since　　B. Unless　　C. As　　D. Although

（ ）9. Start out right away, ____ you'll miss the first train.

A. and　　B. or　　C. but　　D. while

（ ）10. ____ Jack ____ Edward watched TV yesterday evening because they were busy with their lessons.

A. Neither; nor　　B. Either; or

C. Both; and　　D. Not only; but also

（ ）11. We were having a meeting _____ someone broke in.

A. when　　B. if　　C. and　　D. till

（ ）12. It must have rained last night, _____ the ground is wet.

A. and　　B. so　　C. but　　D. for

（ ）13. Go along the road, _____ you'll find the post office at the end of it.

A. when　　B. and　　C. or　　D. though

（ ）14. The joy of traveling is _____ in arriving at your destination _____ in the journey itself.

A. / ; but　　B. / ; or　　C. not; or　　D. not; but

（ ）15. He likes pop music,_____ I am fond of folk music.

A. while　　B. until　　C. when　　D. before

练习二

回眸高考：2001—2015 年对口单招考试的“并列句”高考真题。

（　）1. He is a teacher,_____ a singer as well.（2003）

A．but　　B. or　　C．and　　D．nor

（　）2. The menu that the waiter gave to the man gave a reasonable price, _____ the menu that he gave to the lady gave a much higher price.（2004）

A．which　　B. while　　C．therefore　　D．or

（　）3. Though his parents worked very hard, ____ still couldn’t support the large family of twelve several years ago.（2006）

A．so they　　B．but they　　C．and they　　D．they

（　）4. Not only was he good at English _____.（2006）

A．so at Chinese　　B．still at Chinese

C．also at Chinese　　D．but at Chinese

（　）5. John plays basketball well, ____ his favorite sport is badminton.（2010）

A．so　　B．or　　C．yet　　D．for

（　）6. The sky was cloudless, _____ the sun was shining brightly.（2011）

A．but　　B．and　　C．yet　　D．for

（　）7. Have a cup of water, _____ you’ll feel better.（2012）

A．or　　B．so　　C．but　　D．and

（　）8. Excuse me, _____ can you tell me the way to the nearest theatre?（2013）

A．because　　B．since　　C．but　　D．if

复合句综合练习

（　）1. The reason _____ he told me is _____ he is ill.

A．that; that　　B．which; which　　C．that; which　　D．what; that

（　）2. _____ he will go to the USA for further study is clear.

A．Whether　　B．That　　C．Which　　D．If

（　）3. It will be a long time _____ Frank _____ back from abroad.

A．before; comes　　B．since; has come

C．when; will come　　D．after; came

（　）4. It seems that the cars _____ in Shanghai always sell very well.

A．which produced　　B．that are producing

C．that produce　　D．which are produced

（　）5. We must help people _____.

A．who are dangerous　　B．who are in danger

C．who is dangerous　　D．who is danger

（　）6. It doesn’t matter _____ I miss the train or not because there will be another later.

A．whether　　B．if　　C．whenever　　D．as if

（　）7. They seemed to have done well, _____ they were chatting happily.
A. so　　B. but　　C. for　　D. when

（　）8. Will you clean the blackboard yourself _____ will you ask someone else to clean it?
A. but　　B. and　　C. or　　D. so

（　）9. The bear gave birth to four babies last night, but _____ died soon after birth.
A. two of which　　B. two of them
C. both of them　　D. the two of them

（　）10. Most animals can swim right away _____ they go into the water.
A. the first time　　B. for the first time
C. when first　　D. firstly

（　）11. It is almost impossible to become skillful in speaking a language _____ you use it constantly.
A. for　　B. So　　C. unless　　D. until

（　）12. _____, Jack can never keep up with Mike in English study.
A. However he tries hard　　B. No matter how hard he tries
C. As hard he tries　　D. No matter what he tries hard

（　）13. She is the only one among the _____ writers who _____ stories for children.
A. woman; writes　　B. women; write
C. women; writes　　D. woman; write

（　）14. _____ surprised me was the way _____ he spoke to his mother.
A. what; that　　B. what; which　　C. that; what　　D. which; what

（　）15. We don't doubt _____ he is suitable for the job.
A. whether　　B. that　　C. whether or not　　D. if

（　）16. _____, and then you will make greater progress.
A. Study hard　　B. To study hard
C. Studying hard　　D. If you studied hard

（　）17. Do remind me of the date again tomorrow _____ I forget.
A. in case　　B. except that　　C. even if　　D. as though

（　）18. Peter took up collecting coins, _____ surprised his family.
A. and it　　B. and which　　C. that　　D. who

（　）19. No one knows _____ the Internet is going to affect our life.
A. how long　　B. how many　　C. how far　　D. how much

（　）20. Let's begin our meeting _____ everybody is here.
A. now that　　B. although
C. even if　　D. until

专题二　情景交际

交际功能项目表

1. 问候与道别（Greeting and saying goodbye）
2. 引荐与介绍（Introducing oneself and others）
3. 感谢与道歉（Expressing thanks and making apologies）
4. 预约与邀请（Making appointments and invitations）
5. 祝愿与祝贺（Expressing wishes and congratulations）
6. 求助与提供帮助（Asking for and offering help）
7. 赞同与反对（Expressing agreement and disagreement）
8. 接受与拒绝（Accepting and rejecting）
9. 劝告与建议（Giving advice and making suggestions）
10. 投诉与责备（Complaining and blaming）
11. 表扬与鼓励（Praising and encouraging）
12. 指令与要求（Giving instructions and making requests）
13. 禁止与警告（Prohibiting and warning）
14. 询问与提供信息（Seeking and offering information）
15. 情感表达（Expressing feelings and emotions）
16. 讨价还价（Bargaining）

考纲要求

能够掌握日常生活及通用职业场景下的基本交际用语。

样题

样题 1. — Will you be able to come and help us fix the machine?

— _____, but I'm writing a report, it must be finished before noon.

A. I'd love to　B. I hope not　C. I do care　D. I'm afraid not

【分析】选择 A。本题属于“求助与提供帮助”的类型，根据题意，一方请求别人的帮助，而另一方虽未能帮助，但乐意提供帮助，可用 I'd love to. 这是一种礼貌的表达方式。

样题 2.

A: You look unhappy, what's the matter?

B: My brother yelled at me just now, I don't know why.

A: How could he do that to you? You must be angry.

B: I do! And I did nothing wrong.

A: Maybe he is in a bad mood, he just wanted to find a scapegoat. Forget about it, Let's go to the park for sightseeing.

B: Good idea. Let's go.

Why is the person unhappy?

A．Because he did something wrong.　B．Because his brother yelled at him.

C．Because he was in a bad mood.　D．Because he wanted to go to the park.

【分析】选择 B。属于“劝告与建议”的类型。

样题 3. — _____ ! Somebody has left the lab door open.

— Don't look at me, it's not me.

A．Hi, there　B．Dear me　C．Look at　D．Come on

【分析】选择 B，属于“投诉与责备”的类型。Dear me 哎呀，天啊，表示惊叹或惊讶。

讲解

一、考纲交际功能项目

1. 问候与道别

问候对方：Good morning / afternoon / evening. 或 Hi. / Hello.

— How are you?　— Fine, thank you. And you? / Very well, thank you.

How do you do?（初次见面用）

Nice / Glad / Pleased to see / meet you.（平时见面时用）

转达问候：Please send my regards / best wishes to… 或 Best wishes / regards to…

或 Please remember me to…。答句是 Thank you, I will.

道别：Nice meeting you.（告别时用） / Bye! / Good-bye!

（　）1. — _____

— Fine, thanks.

A．Hello!　B．How are you?

C．How do you do?　D．Pleased to meet you.

（　）2. — Please give my regards to your sister.

— _____.

A．You can call her　B．Thanks, I will

C．It's not necessary　D．You are kind

2. 引荐与介绍

介绍别人：This is Mr. / Mrs. … 或 May I introduce you to…? 或 I'd like you to meet…

介绍自己：My name is… / I'm … / Please call me…

（　）1. — Hello, everyone. _____, a friend of mine.

— Nice to see you, I'm Mary.

A．He is John　B．This is John

C．I think you know him　　D．She is Mary

（　）2. — Could I have your name, please?

— _____.

A．You're very polite　　B．Oh, you can

C．Please call me Rose　　D．It's kind of you

3. 感谢与道歉

感谢：　Thank you. / Thanks a lot. / Many thanks.

感谢答语：That's all right. / It's all right. / You're welcome. / Not at all. / It's my pleasure. / It's a pleasure. / Don't mention it. / It's nothing.

道歉：　I'm sorry（for sth. / about sth. / to do…） / Excuse me（for…） / Pardon me（for…） / I beg your pardon.

道歉答语：That's（= It's）all right. / That's OK. / Never mind. / That's nothing. / It doesn't matter. / Forget it. / It's nothing. / Don't worry about it.

（　）1. — I'm sorry, I'm late, I should have phoned you earlier.

— _____.

A．You are welcome　　B．That's right

C．Don't say sorry　　D．It doesn't matter, I've just arrived

（　）2. — Thank you for the flowers.

— _____. I thought they might cheer you up.

A．That's right　　B．All right

C．I'm all right　　D．It's all right

4. 预约与邀请

预约：　Shall we meet at 8:30?

预约答语：All right, see you then. / Yes, I'll be free then. / I'm afraid I will not be available then.

邀请：　Would you like to…? / I'd like to invite you to…

邀请答语：Yes. I'd like / love to, but I'm too busy. 或 Yes, with pleasure. / It's kind of you to invite me, but I'm not sure if I can come. / Sorry, but… / I'd like to, but… / I'm afraid… / I'd rather not.

（　）1. — Our company will hold an anniversary party this weekend, would you like to come?

— _____.

A．Really? Let me think　　B．With pleasure

C．I will be busy then　　D．I'll try my best

（　）2. — Would you like to join us for a drink before the meeting?

— _____, but I promised Liu Ming to go to the post office.

A．I'd like to　B．I don't　　C．I will　　D．I like it

5. 祝愿与祝贺

他人取得成功，你可说 Congratualtions! 对方的回答一般是 Thank you.
他人去考试，你可说 Gook luck!
他人去玩乐，你可说 Have fun! / Have a good time! / Enjoy your stay there!
他人去旅行，你可说 Have a good trip! / Have a pleasant journey!等。
如果和大家同乐，你可说 Happy New Year / Christmas! 对方的回答是 The same to you. / You, too.
别人生日，你可说 Happy birthday! 对方的回答是 Thank you.

（ ）1. — I got the job as an assistant manager in ABC company.
— _____ That's good news.
A. Go ahead. B. Cheers. C. Congratulations! D. Come on.

（ ）2. — I'm going to Suzhou for my driving test tomorrow.
— _____!
A. Gook luck B. Cheers C. Congratulations D. Come on

6. 求助与提供帮助

求助：Could you do me a favor….? / Can I ask a favor of you? / Will（Would / Could）you please help me….? / Would you mind…? / Could you give me a hand? 愿意帮助可用 With pleasure.
提供帮助：Can I help you? / What can I do for you? / Is there anything I can do for you? / Would you like me to…? / Let me…for you. / Can I give you a hand?
接受帮助：Thanks. That would be nice（= fine）. / Thanks, that's kind of you! / Yes, please.
拒绝帮助：No, thanks, I can manage it myself. / No, but thank you all the same. / That's kind of you, but… / No, it's all right. I can manage myself.

（ ）1. — Would you please help me with the box?
— _____.
A. Yes, please B. No, please don't C. With pleasure D. My pleasure

（ ）2. — May I help you? You seem to be having some problems.
— _____, I think I can manage.
A. No, thanks B. All right
C. No problem D. There's no way

7. 赞同与反对

赞同：You are quite right. / I agree with you. / I couldn't agree more. / It couldn't be better. / Why not?
反对：I really can't agree with you. / No way. / I don't think so. / You can't… / Not likely.

（ ）1. — Mum, could I go out to play basketball?
— _____, unless you finish your homework first.

A．Of course, you can't　　B．Ok, you can
C．Take your time　　D．It's none of your business

（　）2. — Tom's plan is excellent, isn't it?
— _____. It's not practical.
A．It couldn't be better　　B．I don't think so
C．Just so-so　　D．I agree with you on that

8. 接受与拒绝

请参考 6 “ 求助与提供帮助 ”。

9. 劝告与建议

劝告和建议：You'd better（not）do… / You ought（not）to… / You need to do… / I suggest … / Let's… / Shall we…? / Why not do…? / Why don't you do…? / How about…? / What about…?
答句：Good idea. / Sounds good. / Great! / I'm afraid that… / I'm sorry, but… / I'd like to, but… / It's up to you. / That depends. / It all depends.

（　）1. — What about having a drink?
— _____.
A．Good idea.　B．Help yourself.　C．Go ahead.　D．Me too.

（　）2. — My mother is preparing my favourite dishes. Go with me and have a taste, OK?
— _____, and I'll be glad to meet your parents.
A．I think so.　B．I'd love to　C．I'm sure　D．I hope so

10. 投诉与责备

投诉：I'm afraid I have a complaint to make about…
责备：Why didn't you tell me…? / What do you mean by saying so? / Can't you…? / Why do you think so?……
答句：Sorry. / I'm really sorry. / It's none of your business. / It's my fault. / Pardon me.（对不起）

（　）1. — Can't you read the sign, sir? No smoking in the lift!
— _____.
A．Never mind　　B．Sure, I don't smoke
C．Pardon me　　D．Don't say so

（　）2. — Hi. My name is Lisa Wang. I would like to file a complaint of the poor service of your hotel.
— _____.
A．Thank you for your attention.
B．I promise you that will not repeat.
C．I am sorry to hear that. Could you tell me exactly what it is all about?
D．Sorry,I cannot help you!

11. 表扬与鼓励

表扬：Your handwriting is excellent! / Good work! / Well done! / Wonderful!……
鼓励：You can do it! / Keep trying! / Come on! / Have a try!……

（ ）1. — You've given us a wonderful dinner!
— _____.
A. I'm glad you enjoyed it　　B. Oh, I'm afraid I didn't cook well
C. Come again　　D. Don't say so

（ ）2. — I'm tired. I can't walk any farther, Jenny.
— _____, Tommy. You can do it!
A. No problem　　B. No hurry
C. Come on　　D. That's OK

12. 指令与要求

You'd better… / You should… / Don't… / Please be quiet! ……

（ ）1. — Don't leave water running when you brush your teeth.
— _____.
A. I'm afraid not　　B. Sorry, I won't
C. I hope so　　D. It's nothing

（ ）2. — Can I have some cookies, Mom?
— _____ I'll get you some.
A. No way.　B. How come?　C. No,you can't.　D. Why not?

13. 禁止与警告

禁止：No smoking! / No parking! / No spitting! / No speeding! / Don't… / You mustn't…
警告：Wet paint! / Take care! / Watch out! / Be careful! / Look out! / You'd better not do… / Be sure not to do… / Mind your step!……

（ ）1. — Don't touch the machine when it's working!
— _____
A. Why?　　B. What's up?
C. What's going on?　　D. Oh, I won't. Thank you.

（ ）2. — Do be careful next time.
— _____.
A. I will　B. I do　C. I can　D. I am

14. 询问与提供信息

询问与提供信息涉及面很广，询问句型一般含疑问词 wh- / how。

（ ）1. — How would you like your coffee?
— _____.
A. It's delicious　　B. Good

C．White, please　　D．Thank you

（ ）2. — Excuse me, could you tell me where I could make a call?

— Sorry, I'm a stranger here.

— _____.

A．Thanks a lot　　B．Thanks anyway

C．That's a pity　　D．I'm sorry to hear that

15. 情感表达

高兴：How wonderful! / That's great! / I'm so happy（to…） / I'm glad to hear that. / Well done!

喜欢和不喜欢：I like… / I hate… / I don't like… / I prefer…to… / I'd rather…

遗憾：It's a pity that… / What a pity! / What a shame! / I'm so sorry.

恐惧：How terrible! / I'm scared! / Help!……

惊讶：What? / How come? / Are you kidding? / What's up? / Really? / Oh, dear! / Is that so? / How surprising!

不屑：So what?

安慰：Don't worry about it. / Take it easy. / Take your time. / Cheer up!

同情：I'm sorry to hear that. / I'm sorry.

（ ）1. — My goodness! What happened? You have blood on your face.

— _____ I just killed a chicken.

A．No.　　B．What's up?　　C．So what?　　D．Oh, don't worry.

（ ）2. — Tom was killed in the car accident yesterday.

— _____

A．What a pity!　　B．Sorry to hear that.

C．Is that real?　　D．Beg your pardon.

16. 讨价还价

关键词：discount 打折，on sale 廉价出售，for sale 出售，bargain 讨价还价，a real bargain 便宜货，It's a deal. / Deal. 成交。

常用句：

★ — Do you have any discount today?　— Sorry, we don't have any discount today.

★ — What ' s on sale today? / Is there anything on sale today? — Yes, these shoes are on sale.

★ Do they offer a discount for children under 12 years old?

★ I will offer you a discount of 15%.　我给你打八五折。

（ ）1. — If I pay with my credit card, can I have any discount?

— If you pay with your credit card, we can offer you 5% off.

— Ok, _____.

A．so great　　B．it's a deal　　C．I buy it　　D．let's check

（　）2. — I How about this one? You can have it at 5% off the regular price.

— It's nice, but still too expensive. Can you give me a 15% discount?

— _____

A．Deal!　　B．Why?　　C．Great!　　D．My god!

二、日常生活中的交际用语考点归纳

考点 1. A pleasure 与 With pleasure

① A pleasure. = My pleasure. = It's a pleasure.“ 不用谢 ”, 当别人表示感谢时用它来回答。

② With pleasure. “ 非常乐意 ”, 当别人请自己帮忙时，自己乐意去做。

（　）1. — Would you do me a favor and give me a ride ?

— _____.

A．Yes, that's right　　B．No trouble

C．Never mind　　D．With pleasure

（　）2. — Thanks for the lovely and delicious food.

— _____.

A．No thanks　B．Never mind　　C．All right　　D．My pleasure

考点 2. No problem 没问题，可以

① 很愿意帮助某人，“ 没问题 ”。

★ — Can you help me to solve the problem?　— No problem.

② 认为做某事 “ 很简单 ”，“ 很容易解决 ”，或 “ 可以这么做 ”。

（　）1. — Can I pay by credit card?

— Yes, _____.

A．you're welcome　　B. my pleasure

C．don't mention it　　D．no problem

（　）2. — We need three single rooms for the first week in June.

— _____. The hotel's not busy then.

A．No problem　　B．Don't bother

C．Never mind　　D．It doesn't matter

考点 3. Mind

当问你是否介意（某人）做某事时，如果你同意，那就是不介意，要用 no / of course not / not at all 来回答；如果你不同意，那就是介意，要用 yes 来回答

（　）1. — Do you mind if I open the window?

— _____ I feel a bit cold.

A．Of course not.　　B．I'd rather you didn't.

C．Go ahead.　　D．Why not?

（　）2. — Would you mind my coming over and having a look at your new garden? My little son's curious about those roses you grow.

— _____ .You're welcome.

A．Yes, I do　B．Never mind　C．Yes, please　D．Not at all

（　）3. — Do you mind my smoking here?

— _____.

A．No, thanks.　B．No. Good idea.

C．Yes, please.　D．Yes. Better not

（　）4. — Sorry, do you mind if I smoke here?

— Yes, _____.

A．you could　B．go ahead　C．I do　D．my pleasure

☞考点 4. Never mind

用于当别人为某事烦恼或向你道歉时。

（　）1. — Oh dear! I've just broken a window.

— ____. It can't be helped.

A．Never mind　B．All right　C．that's fine　D．Not at all

（　）2. — I'm sorry I'm late. I got held up in the traffic on my way here.

— _____.

A．Don't be late next time　B．You should be blamed

C．It doesn't matter, I'm also late　D．Never mind. Come and sit down

☞考点 5. Thank you

按照英语的习惯，别人赞美奉承自己时，应表示感谢，而不是中国式的谦虚。

（　）1. — What a beautiful picture you've drawn!

— _____.

A．Not at all　B．Thank you

C．You're great　D．I'm proud of you

（　）2. — Bruce, I really appreciate your handwriting.

— _____.

A．I practice every day　B．Thank you very much

C．No, I don't think so　D．Well, it's not good enough

☞考点 6. It doesn't matter. 不要紧，没关系。类似 That's all right.

（　）1. — I'm sorry I broke your mirror.

— Oh, really? _____ .

A．It's OK with me　B．It doesn't matter

C．Don't be sorry　D．I don't care

（　）2. — Dad! Tom's broken a glass!

— _____. Accidents will happen.

A．No way　B．Doesn't matter

C．No trouble at all　D．Don't mention it

☞考点 7. Congratulations 表达祝贺，Good luck 表达祝愿

（　）1. — I got the first place in the Textile Design Match.

— _____ ! That's good news.

A．Cheers　　B．You've got what you want
C．Congratulations　　D．Go ahead

（　）2. — I will take a driving test tomorrow.
— _____!
A．Good luck　　B．Have a pleasant journey
C．Hope well　　D．Congratulations

☞考点 8. That's OK / That's all right.

① 用于对别人表示感谢的答语，“不用谢”。

② 用于别人向你道歉时的答语，“没关系”。

That's right. 同意对方的观点或看法时的常用语，“对”“正确”。

（　）1. — We'd like you to start work tomorrow if possible.
— I'm sorry, but I can't possibly start until Monday. _____?
A．Do you agree with me　　B．Is that a good idea
C．Do you think I'm right　　D．Will that be all right

（　）2. — Professor Johnson, I'm afraid I can't finish the report within this week.
— _____. How about next week?
A．Good for you　　B．It won't bother me
C．Not at all　　D．That's OK

（　）3. — What's four and six?
— Ten.
— _____.
A．That's all right　　B．That's right
C．No problem　　D．No wrong

☞考点 9. Why not? 用来表示同意

（　）1. — Let's go to a movie after work, OK?
— _____
A．Not at all.　B．Why not?　C．Never mind.　D．What of it?

（　）2. — How about putting some pictures into the report?
— _____ A picture is worth a thousand words.
A．No way.　B．Why not?　C．All right?　D．No matter.

☞考点 10. Why not do something? 表示建议做某事

（　）1. — It's a long time since I saw my sister.
— _____ her this weekend?
A．Why not visit　　B．why not to visit
C．Why not visiting　　D．Why don't visit

☞考点 11. Not really. 并不完全是，不见得，侧重于“real”。

★ — Was yesterday's party a great success?
— Not really. Tom, who is a good mixer, didn't show up.

Not exactly. 并非如此，不完全是这样，用于纠正别人说的话或说反话时用。侧重于“exact（精确的）”。

★ — So you missed the lecture given by Professor Smith.
— Not exactly. I got there 30 minutes before it finished.

（　）1. — Have you been wasting time on computer games again?
— _____. I've been studying a lot and I need a break.
A. No way　　B. Not really
C. I don't agree　　D. I couldn't agree more

（　）2. — Do you mean to say he will refuse us?
— _____.
A. Not exactly　　B. Not known
C. Not yet　　D. No way

☞考点 12. I'm sorry, but… / I'd like to, but… 婉言拒绝对方的邀请

（　）1. — I'd like to invite you to dinner this Saturday, Mr. Smith.
— _____ .
A. Oh, no. Let's not
B. I'd rather stay at home
C. I'm very sorry, but I have other plans
D. Oh, no. That'll be too much trouble

（　）2. — Would you like to join me for a quick lunch before class?
— _____, but I promised Nancy to go out with her.
A. I'd like to　B. I like it　C. I don't　D. I will

☞考点 13. Help yourself. 随便吃，随便拿……

★ — Might I have some more bread?
— Please, help yourself !

help 在这里是“拿、取”之意，多用于食物，也可用于其他东西。

（　）1. — Do you think I could borrow your dictionary?
— _____.
A. Yes, you may borrow　　B. Yes, you could
C. Yes, help yourself　　D. Yes, go on

☞考点 14. Go ahead 去吧，做吧，表示同意。

（　）1. — I wonder if I could possibly use your car for tonight?
— _____. I'm not using it anyhow.
A. Sure, go ahead　　B. I don't know
C. Yes, indeed　　D. I don't care

（　）2. — Could I ask you a rather personal question?
— Sure, ____.
A. pardon me　B. go ahead　C. good idea　D. forget it

☞考点 15. Forget it

① 不可能 — I'd like to take a week's holiday. — Forget it, we're too busy.

② 没关系，不用担心 — I'm so sorry about that cup. — Oh, forget it — I've got plenty.

（ ）1. — I'd like to take a week's holiday.

— _____, we're too busy.

A．Don't worry　　B．Don't mention it

C．Forget it　　D．Pardon me

（ ）2. — How much do I owe you for lunch?

— _____. It's nothing.

A．You're welcome　　B．Forget it

C．With pleasure　　D．That's right

☞考点 16. It's up to you. 由你决定。

（ ）1. — What do you want to do next? We have half an hour until the basketball game.

— _____. Whatever you want to do is fine with me.

A．It just depends　　B．It's up to you

C．All right　　D．Glad to hear that

（ ）2. — Shall we go to the art exhibition right away?

— _____ .

A．It's your opinion　　B．I don' t mind

C．It's all up to you　　D．That's your decision

☞考点 17. So what? 那又怎样？ 用来表示 It's not important and I don't care.

（ ）1. — Her father is very rich.

— _____ She wouldn't accept his help even if it were offered.

A．What for?　B．So what?　C．No doubt.　D．No wonder.

（ ）2. — Linda didn't invite us to the party.

— _____? I don't care.

A．For what　B．So what　C．What's on　D．What's up

☞考点 18. You guessed it. 固定用法，“你猜对了”

（ ）1. — You know who came yesterday?

— Yao Ming? We had a basketball match.

— _____He came and watched the game.

A．You guessed it!　　B．How did you know that?

C．Well done!　　D．That was good news!

☞考点 19. Take your time. 不着急，慢慢来；Take it easy. 用来安慰别人，“别担心，放松点”。

（ ）1. — Can I look at the menu for a few more minutes before I decide?

— Of course. _____ sir.

A．Make yourself at home　　B．Enjoy yourself

C．It doesn't matter　　D．Take your time

（　）2. — I am afraid I can't pass the math exam next week.

— _____ . You have been preparing for it for a long time.

A．Don't be afraid　　B．Be careful

C．Not at all　　D．Take it easy

☞考点 20. How do you find…

有时 how do you find sth. ?是问你觉得某物怎么样，同 What do you think of…? How do you like…?意思相近。

（　）1. — How did you find your visit to Qingdao, Joanna?

— _____ .

A．Oh, wonderful indeed　　B．I went the alone

C．First by train and then by ship　　D．A guide showed me the way

☞其他常考点

1. **It（all）depends.** 看情况而定。

— How long are you staying?

— I don't know. It depends.

2. **I'm sorry to hear that.** 听到这个很抱歉。用于回答别人说不幸或不顺的事情。

— Mary is badly ill in hospital.

— I'm sorry to hear that. I'll go and see her this afternoon.

3. **It's kind of you.** 你真好。回答别人主动给你提供帮助，如帮你捎口信、提包裹等。

— Can I get you a cup of tea ?

— That's / It's very nice of you.

4. **How come?**

①怎么搞的？怎么回事？ 怎么会？

— The T-shirt I received is not the same as is shown online.

— How come? But I promise you we'll look into it right away.

② 为什么？How come you didn't tell me earlier? = Why didn't you tell me earlier?

5. **Not at all.**

① 不客气。 — Thanks for helping. — Not at all.

② 一点也不。— Do you mind if I record your lecture? — Not at all. Go ahead.

6. **Thanks anyway. / Thank you all the same.** 不管怎样，还是要谢谢你。用于没得到或不需要对方帮忙时。

— I'm sorry I didn't finish it on time.

— Thanks anyway.

7. **That's for sure.** 那是一定的，那是无疑的。

— He works hard and always gets full good marks in the math exam.

— That's for sure.

8. **I couldn't agree more.** 我非常同意。

— The film is worth seeing twice.

— I couldn't agree more. It's very interesting.

9. **Got it.** 知道了。当你向对方介绍某物或某事后，对方理解了，然后对你说“Got it.”如果是问句，则是“Have you got it?”“You got it?”你知道了吗？/ 你明白了吗？

— Look this way. You will have a good view of the whole mountain.

— Got it. Thank you!

10. **by all means** 当然可以。

— Can I come and have a look at your new house?

— Yes, by all means.

11. **No wonder.** 难怪，怪不得。

— Her father is very rich.

— No wonder she wouldn't accept his help.

练习

（ ）1. — Could you do me a favor and take these books to my office?

— Yes, _____.

A. for pleasure　　B. I could

C. my pleasure　　D. with pleasure

（ ）2. — Thank you for joining in our conversation tonight.

— _____.

A. It's my duty　　B. It's all right

C. It's my pleasure　　D It's nice to say so

（ ）3. — Hi, haven't seen you for ages! You look fine.

— _____. You look well, too.

A. Great　　B. Thanks　　C. Oh, no　　D. Not at all

（ ）4. — Sorry, I made a mistake again.

— _____. Practice more and you'll succeed.

A. Never mind　　B. Certainly not

C. Not at all　　D. Don't mention it

（ ）5. — We could invite John and Barbara to the Friday night party.

— Yes, _____ ? I'll give them a call right now.

A. why not　　B. what for　　C. why　　D. what

（ ）6. — We missed you at this morning's meeting, Diana.

— _____, but if I hadn't had to meet a friend, I would have been there.

A. Me, too　　B. I'm sorry　　C. Never mind　　D. Thank you

（ ）7. — Do you think I could borrow your bicycle?

— _____

A. How come?　　B. Take your time.

C. Yes, go on.　　D. Yes, help yourself.

（ ）8. — May I open the window to let in some fresh air ?

— _____

A．Come on.　B．Take care.　C．Go ahead!　D．Hold on!

（　）9. — Thank you ever so much for the book you sent me.
— _____.
A．No thanks　B．I'm glad you like it
C．Please don't say so　D．No, it's not so good

（　）10. — Shall I give you a ride as you live so far away?
— Thank you. _____.
A．It couldn't be better　B．Of course you can
C．If you like　D．It's up to you

（　）11. — How about seeing the new movie at the theatre tonight?
— _____, but I've got to go over my notes for tomorrow's exam.
A．All right　B．Sounds great
C．I can't　D．No, I am terribly sorry

（　）12. — My mother is preparing my favorite dishes, Go with me and have a taste, okay?
— _____. And I'll be glad to meet your parents.
A．I think so　B．I'd love to　C．I'm sure　D．I hope so

（　）13. — I'm sorry I broken the vase.
— Oh, _____. It wasn't very expensive.
A．you'd better not　B．I'm afraid not
C．as you wish　D．that's all right

（　）14. — Are you going to take part in the speech contest?
— _____ It's too good an opportunity to miss.
A．No problem!　B．That's for sure.
C．Why me?　D．Why bother?

（　）15. — Do you enjoy your present job?
— _____. I just do it for a living.
A．Of course　B．Not really　C．Not likely　D．Not a little

（　）16. _____ the children are excited — this is the first time they've been abroad.
A．After all　B．No wonder　C．All right　D．Never mind

（　）17. — Excuse me, could you please tell me how to operate the machine?
— Sorry, I'm afraid I can't help.
— Oh, _____.
A．you are of no help　B．You should have learned
C．I don't believe you　D．Thank you all the same

（　）18. — Max, you seem in high spirits.
— ____. We won the match 4-0.
A．Guess what?　B．So what?
C．No wonder.　D．No doubt.

（　）19. — I have at least an hour of jogging almost every day.

— Oh, great! _____.

A. Good luck　　B. Same to you

C. Cheer up　　D. Keep it up

（　）20. — Happy birthday to you.

— ____.

A. Thank you　　B. The same to you

C. Happy birthday　　D. Me, too

（　）21. — I don't think I'll be able to go mountain-climbing tomorrow.

— _____?

A. And ho　　B. How come　　C. How's it going　　D. How about it

（　）22. — I'm going to Paris for a holiday soon.

— _____.

A. It's my pleasure　　B. Never mind

C. Leave it alone　　D. Have a pleasant journey

（　）23. — I'm going to San Francisco for a couple of days.

— _____. I wish I could get away for a while.

A. It doesn't matter　　B. Forget it

C. I really envy you　　D. I can't agree more

（　）24. — Tom,I made your computer system break down. I will pay someone to repair it.

— Oh. _____. I can solve it by myself.

A. Forget it　　B. Take it easy　　C. No way　　D. Don't say so

（　）25. — Robbin, _____ , but your TV is going too loud.

— Oh, I'm sorry . I'll turn it down right now.

A. I'd like to talk with you　　B. I hate to say this

C. I'm really tired of this　　D. I need your help

（　）26. — Would you like to join a conducted tour of the city?

— _____

A. Where is the tour?　　B. No thanks, I'd rather visit it by myself.

C. I can manage it myself.　　D. Yes, I would.

（　）27. — Thanks a lot for your advice, I found it valuable.

— ____. I'm glad you enjoyed it.

A. All the best　　B. My pleasure

C. No thanks　　D. Very well

（　）28. — _____ will it take me to walk there?

— About ten minutes.

A. How far　　B. How long　　C. How much　　D. What far

（　）29. — This is a really lively party. There's a wonderful atmosphere, isn't there?

— _____. The hosts know how to host a party.

A. Don't worry　　B. No, I don't think so

C．Yes, indeed　　D．It depends

（　）30. — You have to believe in yourself, no one else will, if you don't.

— _____. Confidence is really important.

A．That's not true　　B．I don't think so

C．I couldn't agree more　　D．I hope so

三、通用职业场景下的交际用语归纳

考点 1. 电话用语

（1）— Is Mary there? / May I speak to Mary? 玛丽在吗？（打电话用语。）

— Speaking. / This is Mary speaking. 我就是玛丽。（接电话用语。）

（2）— Can I leave a message? 我可以留个话吗?

— Yes. Go ahead, please. 可以，请说。

（3）Who's that? 你是谁？

（4）The line was busy. 电话占线。One moment, please. / Hold on, please. 请稍等。

（　）1. — May I speak to John Smith?

— _____.

A．I am John Smith　　B．Speaking

C．My name is John Smith　　D．John Smith is here

问句还可以是：Is that John Smith's office? / I'd like to speak to Mr. Smith. / Is John Smith there, please?

（　）2. — Who's calling, please?

— _____

A．This is Jill speaking, I'd like to make an appointment with Mr. Baker.

B．I'm Jill, who are you?

C．Jill, what about you?

D．Here is Jill, I want to speak with your manager.

问句还可以是：Who's speaking, please? / Who is that, please? / May I ask who's calling?

考点 2. 购物

（1）OK. It's a deal. 好的，成交。

（2）— May I help you / What I can do for you? 我可以为你效劳吗?

— I'm looking for a blouse. / No, thanks. I'm just looking around.

我想买一件女式衬衣。/ 谢谢。我只是看看。

（3）What' s on sale today? / Is there anything on sale today? 今天有什么促销商品吗？

（4）What's the price of the necklace ?

（5）— Do you have any discount today? 今天有什么打折商品吗？

— Sorry, we don't have any discount today. 抱歉，今天没什么打折。

（　）1. — Hello, can I help you?

— _____.

A．Yes, please　　B．No, thank you, I'm just looking around

C．I'm a new comer　　D．You are kind

（　）2. — What can I do for you?

— _____.

A．Let's have a look　　B．Of course, you can

C．The shop is new here　　D．May I try on that blue T-shirt?

☞考点 3. 就医

（1）询问病情：What's your trouble? / What's the matter with you? / What's wrong with you? / What's up with you? 你怎么了？

Do you have a fever? / Have you taken your temperature? / How long have you been like this?

（2）病人陈述：I feel terrible. / I can't sleep well. / I've got a cough. / ……

（3）医嘱、安慰、建议：Nothing serious. / You'll be all right soon. / Take the medicine three times a day. / Eat less fat food and more vegetables.

（　）1. — _____?

— I'm feeling cold, and I don't want to eat anything.

A．Are you well?　　B．Are you wrong?

C．What's wrong with you?　　D．Are you ill?

（　）2. — I'm feeling terrible, doctor! Am I going to die?

— _____.

A．Don't worry, there's nothing serious with you

B．You are ill, take it seriously

C．You won't die, you are not wrong

D．Don't be afraid, you are not serious.

☞考点 4. 餐饮

（1）— Would you like some dumplings? / Would you care for something to drink?

— No, thanks. / Yes, please.

（2）— Are you ready to order? — Yes, please. I'd like …

（3）— Waiter! — Yes. Sir?

（4）Help yourself（to…）.

（　）1. — May I take your order, sir?

— _____.

A．No, thanks

B．I am not ready now

C．I'd like a chicken sandwich and a glass of orange juice

D．Help yourself

（　）2. — What's the special of your restaurant today?

— _____

A．Our beer is very good.　　B．Yes, many people like steak.

C．Fresh ham or chicken?　　D．Curry beef, sir.

☞考点 5. 应聘

（　）1. — Can I ask you a few questions about your life?

— _____.

A. As you like　　B. Yes, of course

C. What are they?　　D. Nothing interesting

（　）2. — _____

— Yes, I have worked as an accountant in ABC Company for two years.

A. What year are you in?

B. How long have you worked ?

C. Do you have any working experience?

D. Have you been there?

☞考点 6. 问路与指路

（1）Excuse me, can you tell me the way to…? / Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to…? / Where is…?

（2）Go straight down the street, and you will see… / Turn left at the first crossing. / Walk down here for about 2 minutes.

（　）1. — Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest bus stop is?

— I'm sorry, I have no idea. I _____.

A. don't know　　B. am a stranger here

C. am new　　D. just come

（　）2. — Is your company far from here?

— Not very far, _____.

A. it is about ten minutes' walk　　B. it needs to walk ten minutes

C. you need walking ten minutes　　D. it is about ten-minutes walk

☞考点 7. 投诉、抱怨

（　）1. — Waiter，I can't eat the cabbage, it's too salty.

— _____.

A. I don't know.

B. Don't mention it.

C. I'm sorry, I'll change one for you.

D. Don't be angry, you're welcome.

（　）2. — The T-shirt I bought last week became too small after washing, I can't wear it now.

— _____.

A. Forget it, please

B. I'm sorry you bought such one

C. This one is not good, do you have the receipt?

D. I'm sorry, what would you like us to do?

☞考点 8. 旅游

（　）1. — Wish you a good journey.

— _____.

A．The same to you　　B．Me, too

C．Yes, I'll　　D．Thank you very much

（　）2. — What do you think of your journey to E-mei Mountain?

— _____

A．It's amazing, it's well worth visiting.

B．E-mei Mountain is very beautiful.

C．What if our car breaks down on the way.

D．You want to go there?

☞考点 9. 住宿（入住、离开、服务）

（　）1. — Shanghai International Hotel, can I help you?

— _____

A．I'd like to book a double room for two nights.

B．I'm calling from Hong Kong.

C．Yes, please.

D．Yes, you can, I want to live in room facing south.

（　）2. — How do you want to pay, madam? Cash or Credit Card?

— _____.

A．Let me think it over　　B．Is credit card ok?

C．It's up to you　　D．Credit card, please

☞考点 10. 谈论天气

（1）What's the weather like today? / How is the weather? / What's the temperature? ……

（2）It's sunny / windy / snowy / foggy / rainy / cold / hot / chilly ……

（　）1. — I don't know about you, but I'm really sick of the weather here.

— _____. I can't stand all the storm.

A．I don't care　　B．It's hard to say

C．So am I　　D．I hope so

（　）2. — What's the weather like today?

— _____.

A．I like the weather　　B．It's windy today

C．Today is my day　　D．It's ok

☞考点 11. 兑换零钱

（　）1. — Excuse me, but could I trouble you for some change?

— _____. Will pennies do?

A．I know　　B．Never mind　　C．I am sure　　D．Let me see

（　）2. — _____

— One ¥50, two ¥20, and one ¥10, please.

A．How would you like your money?

B．What's wrong with the money?
C．What's the special about the money?
D．How is the money?

☞考点 12. 在银行

（　）1. — I'd like to transfer ¥5000 to my mother's account, what should I do?
— _____
A．Could you please tell me your name?
B．Please fill out the form first.
C．Money out!
D．What's your mother?

（　）2. — Do you have online bank service?
— _____
A．No, we don't have such service.　B．What's online bank service?
C．No, what can I do for you?　D．Yes, please.

☞考点 13. 在售票处

（　）1. — I'd like two tickets for this Wednesday's "Interstellar".
— _____
A．You are late, you should have come earlier.
B．Sorry, they are sold out.
C．Will next Wednesday's be ok?
D．The film is very interesting.

（　）2. — I'd like three express train tickets, two adults and one child.
— ¥280 / adult, ¥140 / child.
— Here is the money.
— _____.
A．Here are your tickets　B．Give it to me
C．Ok, put it here　D．Thank you

☞考点 14 介绍和开场白

（　）1. — Morning everyone, how are you today?
— _____.
A．It's ok　B．Today is fine
C．We're fine　D．You are well

（　）2. — Nice to meet you, Johnson.
— _____.
A．Nice to meet you, too　B．Thank you
C．Very well　D．It's nice

练习

（　）1. — I can't live in this room, the towels are dirty, and the bathroom door is broken.

— _____.

A. I'm sorry sir, I'll attend to it at once

B. Really? I can't believe it

C. I must report it to our manager at once

D. Our repairman will arrive soon

() 2. — I'm sorry for having sent you the wrong items you ordered, I'll send you the right ones at once.

— _____.

A. Never mind　　B. That's right

C. I have no idea　　D. You are welcome

() 3. — Have you got a table for two, please?

— _____.

A. We don't have such tables　　B. Yes, this way please.

C. No, we haven't.　　D. We've got two tables.

() 4. — _____

— Yes, I'll send someone to get your suits at once.

A. Good evening, is there a laundry here?

B. Hello, my suits need dry-cleaning, can you help me?

C. Who is in charge of the laundry?

D. Laundry, please.

() 5. — How did your interview with the manager go?

— _____ He seemed interested in my experience, but he didn't ask for references.

A. Perfect!　B. I'm not sure.　C. That's right.　D. Couldn't be better.

() 6. — _____?

— A double, please. How much is that?

— $200 a night.

A. What can I do　　B. Can I help you

C. What would you like for room　　D. Would you prefer a single or a double

() 7. — What can I do for you?

— _____.

A. You are welcome　　B. I'd like to buy a pair of sneakers

C. I don't want anything　　D. The coat is very beautiful.

() 8. — May I speak to Doctor Baker?

— _____.

A. I am Doctor Baker.

B. Doctor Baker is out.

C. Hold on, please, I'll transfer you to him.

D. Doctor Baker is busy, he can't answer you.

() 9. — I'd like a morning call at 6:30 tomorrow, please!

— Ok, _____.

A. help yourself　　B. you'll certainly make it

C. just do what you like　　D. I'll make sure you get one

(　) 10. — I'm afraid you have the wrong number.

— Sorry!_____.

A. I hope I didn't bother you　　B. I didn't know that

C. See you later　　D. I'll put you through

(　) 11. — Excuse me. How much is the watch?

— _____.

A. Fifty pounds each　　B. Extremely good

C. It sells well　　D. Altogether there are 5

(　) 12. — Can you pay for the dinner for me? I have no money with me.

— _____.

A. No problem　　B. Don't bother

C. Never mention it　　D. No wonder

(　) 13. — You look confident about the job interview, aren't you?

—_____. I'm well prepared and I feel I've got everything ready.

A. Sure, I am　　B. it's hard to say

C. It's ok　　D. Well, maybe

(　) 14. — Excuse me, could you give me change for a dollar?

— _____.

A. I'm sorry, I'm a stranger here　　B. Quarters, dimes or nickels?

C. We don't have such service　　D. Yes, I could

(　) 15. — Can I help you? Are you looking for anything important?

— _____, we're just looking.

A. Yes please　　B. No, thank you

C. Yes, you can　　D. No, you needn't

(　) 16. — Good evening. Huangshan Hotel.

— Good evening._____ ?

A. Do you still have a room for tonight

B. What would you like, please

C. Is there anything I can do for you

D. Who is that speaking, please

(　) 17. — Do you want another drink?

— _____.

A. I don't think so　　B. No way

C. Not at all　　D. I wouldn't say no

(　) 18. — My God! I haven't prepared the files for the new project yet!

— _____.The boss won't need it until next Friday.

A．There is no doubt　　B．There's no panic
C．Good luck　　D．Sounds good

（　）19. — May I speak to Mr. Smith, please?
— Smith speaking. Please _____.
A．go forward　　B．go ahead
C．go straight　　D．go all the way

（　）20. — What's _____ sale today?
— Sorry, we don't have any _____ today.
A．on; discount　　B. for; discount
C．on; sale　　D．for; sale

四、长句、摘录和对话理解

练习

This is a place where you can buy or sell second-hand, homemade or handmade goods. It can be held indoors in a warehouse or a gym or a school…

（　）1. What is the place?
A．A supermarket　　B．A department store
C．A shopping mall　　D．A flea market

I'll start with some tips on how to make a monthly spending plan. Firstly, know how much you can earn a month clearly, then make a list of what you have to buy in a month, cross those which are not very urgent.

（　）2. What do you think the information is from?
A．science book　　B．An employee manual
C．How to arrange your finance?　　D．A security manual

" I really like the leading actress, she acted very vividly and the plot is very exciting, the background music is good too."

（　）3. What is the person talking about?
A．A film　　B．A ball　　C．A party　　D．A project

Johnny has been answering calls since 8:00 a.m., and he is very tired, he has been dealing with customers' reservations and cancels.

（　）4. Question: From this material, we know Johnny is a _____.
A．teacher　　B．poster　　C．receptionist　　D．typist

This club is open to people who care about keeping our air and water clean, our wildlife protected, and our planet safe for us and our future generations.

（　）5. Question: What club is it?

A．Film club　　B．Environmental club
C．Art club　　D．Sports club

"Linda, girl, 5years old, has been missing since December 10.2014. She was wearing a red coat and a pair of purple boots. If you have information, please contact John Black at 18036628213. "

（　）6. This is a（n）_____ .
A．notice　　B．invitation　　C．advertisement　　D．search notice

Internet is very convenient, you can almost find whatever you want on the internet, but at the same time, there's too much information, sometimes you do not know what is good, and what is bad, it's difficult for you to choose the right information .

（　）7. This statement is mainly talking about _____.
A．advantages of internet　　B．disadvantages of internet
C．both A & B　　D．internet is useless

Minutes are the written record of a meeting taken by the minute-taker. It is used to give an accurate record of what has been said and discussed, and is useful for someone who was not present at the meeting.

（　）8. What does the italicized（斜体）word mean?
A.会议记录　　B．分钟　　C．便条　　D．瞬间

（　）9. What's the meaning of the sign? 
A．No parking!　　B．No spitting!
C．No smoking!　　D．Do speeding!

— Are you going on holiday?
— No, I'm traveling on business. I'll meet the CEO at Deerwood Ltd. In New York.

（　）10. What is the man?
A．A cook　　B．A businessman　　C．A dentist　　D．A traveler

A: Advance Reservations. May I help you?
B: Yes, I'm phoning up because I booked a room for a friend. He won't be able to come because of the bad weather and so I have to cancel it.

（　）11. Question: Why does the man make this phone call?
A．Cancel a reservation　　B．Make a reservation
C．Make an appointment　　D．Cancel an appointment

A: Welcome to Beijing, I'm from Beijing University, I'm here to meet you.
B: How do you do?
A: How do you do? We hope you'll enjoy your stay here.

（　）12. Where may this conversation take place?

A. In the bookshop　　B. In the hospital
C. In the office　　D. At the airport

A: How about this tie? Does it go with my shirt?
B: Not really. Why not wear that red one?
A: Oh, that one. I'll get it. How is it now?
B: It goes perfect with your shirt.

(　) 13. What are they talking about?
A. Dress　　B. Hairdressing　　C. Business　　D. Traveling

Jill: Hey, David. Long time no see. What do you do now?
David: I'm a HR manager for Europe in a company. I'm in charge of 50 departments.
Jill: Wow! That must be quite stressful.
David: It can be, but I like the responsibility.

(　) 14. What's David's attitude towards his job?
A. Stressful　　B. Negative　　C. Active　　D. Neutral

Good evening! Here's the next day weather report for Tianjin. It is sunny and hot with the temperature from 20℃ to 29℃. There is a strong wind during the night time with the temperature from 11℃ to 15℃. That's the weather report for today . Thank you for listening .

(　) 15. Who do you think is speaking?
A. teacher　　B. A weather reporter
C. A policeman　　D. A doctor

I'm Li Ming, a student majoring in English at Suzhou University. I read in yesterday's newspaper that you are looking for a part-time secretary and I think I'll prove to be a real find for you. I once worked as a temporary interpreter at the East China Export Commodities Fair. In addition, during the past two years, I have been working as a part-time tour guide. My jobs offered me good opportunities to improve my English and work competence and I enjoy them very much.

(　) 16. What job does Li Ming want to apply for?
A. An accountant　　B. An interpreter
C. A tour guide　　D. A part-time secretary

Wanted
Here are the basic requirements you need to have:
1. Be patient enough and kind to patients.
2. Have at least two years' clinical experience .
3. Friendly and helpful.
4. Be competent to communicate with the patients' family.

(　) 17. _____ are needed in this advertisement.

A．Doctors　　B．Teachers　　C．Engineers　　D．Policemen

☆Wash your hands after you go to the toilet, before you handle the food.
☆Keep the floor clean and dry.
☆Make sure chilled foods are kept in the right temperature.
☆Keep your hair tied back and wear a hat.

（　）18. This may be an excerpt from _____.

A．a company meeting on marketing
B．an interview
C．a training course given to new employees
D．a report

Dear Mr. Wang,

We are very pleased to inform you that you'll be a member of our team. We hope that you could arrive next Monday to register for our company, and to fill in a copy of employee's Register format.

Wish you happiness and progress in our company.

Beijing Jinhai Trading Company

（　）19. It is a / an _____.

A．letter of complaint　　B．letter of application
C．letter of thanks　　D．offer letter

A: Is it an iPad?
B: No, it isn't.
A: Is it a toy for fun?
B: Of course not.
A: It is likely that it is mobile phone supporter.
B: You got it.

（　）20. What is "it" ?

A．An iPad　　B．A mobile phone
C．A mobile phone supporter　　D．A toy

A: Hello. This is the emergency 110 operator.
B: Help! Help! Please help me.
A: What's the matter?
B: I want to report a robbery.
A: When and where did it happen?
B: Just now at Green Street.
A: Don't overact. The police will be arriving in five minutes.

（　）21. What happened in the dialogue?

A．A theft　　B．A robbery　　C．An accident　　D．A fire

A: I can't believe these skirts are so cheap.
B: I know and they are really nice, too.
A: I'll have to get a couple in different colors.
B: Me, too.
A: Buy them now, or they might not still be here tomorrow.
B: Good idea, especially at this price.

（　）22. What is the relationship between the two persons?

A．Teacher and student　　B．Friends
C．Doctor and patient　　D．Shop assistant and customer

Tim:　Would you like to have more, Peter?
Peter:　No, thanks. I've had enough.
Tim:　In fact, you haven't had enough.
Peter:　To tell you the truth, I'm on a diet.

（　）23. Why didn't peter want more?

A．He is on a diet.　　B．He has had enough.
C．He wants to put on weight.　　D．He is too fat.

Dear Miss Yang,
I'm writing to apologize for the unpleasant experiences you had in our store. I have talked with that shop assistant, it's all her fault to say like that. We'll give you a discount coupon to express our apology. We sincerely hope you can come to our store again.

（　）24. It's an excerpt from a letter of _____ .

A．thanks　　B．introduction　　C．apology　　D．complaint

Dear Mrs. Green,
We have been friends for many years, but… Should I give up on this friendship? I really don't know what to do.
Yours,
Tom

（　）25. What does Mrs. Green do?

A．She is a doctor of pets.　　B．She is an expert in relationship
C．She is a CFO.　　D．She is a fashion designer.

五、情景交际综合练习

（　）1. — Could I use your computer for a few moments, please?
— _____. I'm not using it myself.

A. Come on　　B. It depends
C. That's great　　D. Go ahead

（　）2. — Would you please help me with my luggage?
— _____ .
A. Yes, please　　B. No, please don't
C. With pleasure　　D. My pleasure

（　）3. — Good evening! What can I do for you?
— We have booked a room for today and tomorrow.
— _____, sir. Would you please wait for a moment?
A. I'm sure　　B. My pleasure
C. It's all right　　D. I'll check

（　）4. — Well done and congratulations to you!
— _____ .
A. Thanks very much　　B. You are welcome
C. The same to you　　D. Me too

（　）5. — Thanks a lot for your book. I found it very interesting.
— _____. I'm glad you enjoyed it.
A. All the best　　B. It is nothing
C. No thanks　　D. Very well

（　）6. — Reading is the best way to pass time on the train.
— _____, I never go travelling without a book.
A. You are joking　　B. That's true
C. I don't think so　　D. It sounds like fun

（　）7. — What shall we do tonight then?
— _____ whatever you want.
A. Help yourself　　B. It's a deal
C. No problem　　D. It's up to you

（　）8. — I'd rather have some wine, if you don't mind.
— _____. Don't forget that you'll drive.
— I'm sorry I nearly forgot.
A. I'm sorry, but you'd better not　　B. Not at all, anything you want
C. Thank you all the same　　D. Yes, never mind

（　）9. — I'm going to Venice next week.
— _____ . Carnival（嘉年华）will be held then. Have fun!
A. You're crazy　　B. You are lucky
C. You'd better not　　D. You never know

（　）10. — Can I help you? Are you looking for anything in particular today?
— _____, we're just looking.
A. Yes, please　　B. No, thank you
C. Yes, you can　　D. No, you needn't

（　）11. — I'm sorry I made a mistake!

— ____. Nobody is perfect.

A. Take your time　　B. You're right

C. Whatever you say　　D. Take it easy

（　）12. — How about dinner tonight? It's on me（我请客）.

— _____.

A. You are welcome　　B. Oh, I'd like to

C. Well, I'm afraid so　　D. That's all right

（　）13. — Would she mind playing against her former teammates?

— _____ . She is willing to play against any tough players.

A. I think so　　B. I'm not surprised

C. Of course　　D. Not likely

（　）14. — So you gave her your iPad?

— _____, she said she'd return it to me when she could afford her own.

A. My pleasure　　B. No doubt

C. Not exactly　　D. All right

（　）15. — The trip shouldn't take more than an hour.

— _____ .It is at least two hours.

A. I guess so　B. That's it　C. You must be joking　D. It depends

（　）16. — I don't have any change with me. Will you please pay the fare for me?

— _____.

A. That's fine　　B. No problem

C. Nothing serious　　D. Never mind

（　）17. — Take care while walking downstairs, Mary fell down and hurt her leg yesterday.

— _____.

A. Thanks for your reminding　　B. Oh? Mary is not careful enough

C. It's none of your business　　D. It doesn't matter

（　）18. — Shall we go for a drink at one o'clock this afternoon?

— _____ .Will two o'clock be OK?

A. Sure, it's up to you　　B. Sorry, I can't make it

C. Sure, no problem　　D. Sorry, I'm not available today

（　）19. — Did you forget about my birthday?

— _____, I've booked a table at Michael's restaurant for this evening.

A. What then?　　B. I'm afraid so.

C. How could I?　　D. For sure.

（　）20. — Is it all right if I keep this book?

— _____.

A. No, you don't　　B. No, it shouldn't

C. I'm afraid not　　D. Don't keep it

（　）21. — I'll do the washing up, darling, would you please look after our baby?

— ___.

A．Yes, please　　B．Yes, sure

C．No, I don't　　D．No, not at all

（　）22. — It's a lovely day, isn't it?

— _____.

A．No, isn't it　　B．I think so

C．Yes, it is　　D．Maybe

（　）23. — Your hairclip（发夹）goes well with your scarf.

— _____.

A．Thank you　　B．Oh no, it's nothing

C．Really? I can't believe it　　D．I don't think so

（　）24. — Would you like me to help you with the case?

— _____.

A．Yes, I would　　B．Please don't. I can manage it myself

C．No, you needn't　　D．Yes please, it's very kind of you

（　）25. — How shall we spend the weekend?

— _____, whatever you want.

A．Help yourself　　B．It's a deal

C．No problem　　D．It's up to you

（　）26. — What about Karaoke tonight? It's on me.

— _____.

A．You're welcome　　B．Good idea, I'd like to

C．Well, I'm afraid so　　D．That's all right

（　）27. — Thank you for having cooked us a delicious meal .

— _____.

A．It's good　　B．With pleasure

C．I'm glad you enjoyed it　　D．Oh, no, don't say so

（　）28. — Shall we go shopping together after work?

— _____.

A．Have a nice time　　B．That sounds great

C．You are nice　　D．It must be interesting

（　）29. — I've never found a better job.

— _____.

A．I don't think so　　B．Too Bad

C．Congratulations　　D．Don't worry

（　）30. — What a fine day! Shall we go picnicking?

— _____ . But we need to be home before six o'clock for the football match.

A．Have a nice time　　B．Pardon me

C．That's great　　D．You are right

（　）31. — I've just locked my keys in my room. What should I do now?

— _____.

A. Sorry, I have no idea　　B. Let's calm down and try to open it

C. It's not my business　　D. Who is to blame? You're always careless

M: Hello, I was hoping to exchange a gift I received. This T-shirt is too big for me. Do you have it in a smaller size?

W: Unfortunately, we do not have it in that color. We have it in a smaller size, but only in blue, not black.

（　）32. Why does the man want to exchange his T-shirt?

A. He dislikes the color.　　B. It is the wrong size.

C. It has a hole on it.　　D. He wants to buy a coat.

"Today is May 1st, 2012. Here is the weather report: It is sunny in Beijing, It's a good time for you and your family to go out. While the weather in Shanghai is not good, it is cloudy. Do not forget to take an umbrella with you. How is the weather in some foreign cities? In Moscow, it is snowing; in Boston, it is windy; in Toronto, it is raining."

（　）33. What's the person's job?

Teacher　　B. Weather reporter　C. Salesperson　　D. Receptionist

（XLD: Xilaideng Restaurant；T: Tony）

XLD: Good evening, Xilaideng Restaurant, can I help you?

T: I'd like to make a dinner reservation for this Friday.

XLD: Alright, just a moment please and I'll check our reservations book. Okay, how many people are there in your party?

T: There'll be six, four adults and two children.

XLD: What time would you like the reservation for?

T: 6:30, please.

XLD: Alright, and what is your name?

T: It's Tony.

（　）34. How many people will have a dinner together on Friday night？

A. Five　　B. four　　C. six　　D. eight

A: Welcome to our store, can I help you?

B: I'd like to buy some jeans. How much is this style?

A: It's $60 a pair.

B: Can you give me a discount?

A: Our price is reasonable, how many pairs do you want?

B: If you can give me a 15% discount, maybe I'll buy more.

A: Sorry, it's too low, I can only give you a 10% discount, this is our last price.

B: Ok, I'll take 50 pairs. I do hope you can give me a larger discount next time.
A: All right, We'll think it over.

（　）35. How much should the customer pay for his jeans?
A．$ 2700　　B．$3000　　C．$2550　　D．$2500

For decades doctors have warned us about the dangers of stress and have given us advice about how to cut down our stress levels. Dr. Dirk Marion, an expert, claims that stress is beneficial to our health.

（　）36. Dr. Dirk Marion's attitude towards stress is _____.
A．objective　　B．positive　　C．negative　　D. not mentioned

You have overcome the illness, your family will hold a _____ for you.
Your grandma had died, your family will hold a _____ for her.
Spring festival is coming, your family will have a _____.
a .family reunion　　b. baby shower
c. recovery celebration　　d. funeral

（　）37. The correct answer is _____.
A．abc　　B．bcd　　C．dac　　D．cda

A: Our school uniform is quite cool. Don't you think so?
B: I don't think so. School uniforms prevent self-expression.
A: You mean they make students look the same?
B: Yes.

（　）38. They are talking about _____
A．school uniform　　B．school activity
C．students' opinion　　D．students' club

W: Do people drive on the right in England?
M: No, you mustn't drive on the right here.

（　）39. What are they talking about?
A．Driving in England.
B．How to drive a car.
C．Whether to have the right to drive a car in England.
D．No driving in England.

W: What size do you wear?
M: A twelve.
W: Oh, you're lucky. I have just the right size in store. Here it is. Why don't you try it on?

（　）40. Where does the conversation probably take place?
A．In a clothing store.　　B．At the woman's home.
C．In the sitting room.　　D．In a hotel.

A: Excuse me, sir?
B: Yes?
A: It is dangerous to smoke in the supermarket, it is not allowed.
B: I'm sorry, thank you for reminding me.

（ ）41. What is the relationship between the two persons?
A. Teacher and student　　B. Doctor and patient
C. Husb and and wife　　D. Security guard and customer

A: Excuse me, where shall I register, please?
B: Here. Do you have a registration card?
A: Yes. Here you are.
B: Please register your information here and pay for it. And I'll make a medical record for you.

（ ）42. Where does this conversation take place?
A. Supermarket　　B. Hospital
C. Hotel　　D. Library

W: You seem to have a lot of work at your office. You're always staying late and working overtime.
M: That's true, but I think the work is interesting and fun. I don't mind the extra hours at all.

（ ）43. How does the man feel about his job?
A. He enjoys it.　　B. He doesn't like it at all.
C. He wants to find a new job.　　D. He is out of job.

W: Jack, can you help me with this work?
M: Sure, if it won't take too much time.

（ ）44. What does the man mean?
A. It will take him a long way to help the woman.
B. He can help her for a while.
C. It won't take a long time for him to help her.
D. He refused to help the woman.

W: Didn't you tell Bob about the meeting?
M: Whatever I say to him goes in one ear and out of the other.

（ ）45. What does the man mean?
A. Bob said nothing at the meeting.
B. Something is wrong with Bob's ears.
C. Bob doesn't listen to him.
D. He didn't tell Bob.

六、回眸高考（2001—2015年对口单招考试的“情景交际”高考真题。）

（　）1. — Would you like some oranges?
— _____.（2001）
A. You are welcome　　B. Yes, I like
C. No, thanks　　D. No, I wouldn’t

（　）2. — Would you mind my parking the car here?
— _____.（2002）
A. Yes, please do　　B. Yes, as you please
C. No, certainly not　　D. No, please don’t

（　）3. — Can you lend me some books?
— _____, I have no books here.（2003）
A. I’m afraid so　　B. I’m afraid no
C. I’m afraid not　　D. I’m not afraid

（　）4. — Would you like to leave a message?
— _____. Please tell Jack I’ll be back tomorrow morning.（2004）
A. I want to　　B. I like it very much
C. It’s very kind of you　　D. I certainly will

（　）5. — You seem to get lost, need help?
— _____.（2004）
A. Yes, would you please help me with the bag?
B. Help me find my key, please.
C. Ok, let’s go
D. Yes, I’m looking for Zhongshan Road.

（　）6. — I had a very good weekend at my uncle’s.
— _____.（2004）
A. Oh, that’s very nice of you　　B. Congratulations
C. It’s my pleasure　　D. Oh, I’m glad to hear that

（　）7. — Would you mind helping me to hold the door open please?
— _____.（2005）
A. Of course not　　B. No, please do
C. Yes, I’d like to　　D. Never mind

（　）8. — Jack, how about something to drink?
— ____ .（2010）
A. I wouldn’t mind a coffee　　B. You are welcome
C. No problem　　D. It doesn’t matter

（　）9. — _____?
— It’s going to be cloudy.（2013）
A. Is it going to rain　　B. What’s the weather like today

C. Do you like the weather　　D. It's chilly, isn't it

（　）10. — Mum, shall we watch *voice of china* together this evening?（2013）

— _____.

A. Not at all　　B. It's a good idea

C. You're welcome　　D. Never mind

（　）11. — What do you think about the TV series House of Cards?（2014）

— _____.

A. Wonderful, I think　　B. I think a lot about it

C. I don't think so　　D. All fight

（　）12. — Have you ever been to Maldives?（2014）

— _____.

A. I'm not sure　　B. Sometimes

C. It depends　　D. Never been there

（　）13. — May I speak to Anna?

— Sorry, she is not in. _____（2014）

A. May I leave a message?

B. Can I give a message?

C. Would you like to leave a message?

D. Can you receive her a message?

（　）14. — Excuse me, but could I trouble you for some change?

—_____ Will pennies do?（2014）

A. Let me see.　　B. I'm sure.

C. You're welcome.　　D. Never mention it.

（　）15. — Although it's a good opportunity, I've decided not to accept your offer.

— _____ I do wish you'd think it over.（2014）

A. I'm glad to hear that.　　B. I'm sorry to hear that.

C. I don't think so.　　D. Forget it.

Manager: Can't you knock at the door before you enter my office next time?

Clerk: Sorry, sir. It's just that I'm in such a hurry.

（　）16. The manager expresses his feeling of _____.（2014）

A. sadness　　B. annoyance　　C. surprise　　D. happiness

Man: How do you like your job training?

Woman: In my opinion, the training is necessary and educational.

（　）17. What's the woman's attitude towards the training?（2014）

A. Positive.　　B. Disappointed.　　C. Negative.　　D. Depressed.

Lily: Hurry up, David. It's already ten past seven. We'll be late for the concert.

David: Don't worry, dear. We still have twenty minutes.

（　）18. What time will the concert start?（2014）

A．7:00.　　B．7:10.　　C．7:20.　　D．7:30.

Peter: Susan, what's the matter with you?

Susan: My friend Jane yelled at me just now. I'm not going to talk to her any more.

（　）19. What's the relationship between Susan and Jane?（2014）

A．Sisters.　　B．Relatives.　　C．Friends.　　D．Co-workers.

Jane: I heard on the radio that it'll be fine this weekend. Maybe we can take a trip to Chicago.

Ben: That sounds great. I'll call John to see if he would like to join us.

Jane: John? He has gone to Austria on business.

Ben: What a pity! We'll have to put off the trip.

（　）20. Who will go to Chicago on the coming weekend?（2014）

A．Nobody　　B．Jane　　C．Ben　　D．John

Owen: Did you call your sister to ask about her birthday party?

Henry: Sorry, I didn't. She has gone abroad.

Owen: I don't think that's true. She called off her trip. We had dinner together yesterday evening. Maybe you should put away your computer games and make a phone call at once.

（　）21. What is Henry doing according to the conversation?（2014）

A．He's making a call.　　B．He's playing computer games

C．He's having dinner.　　D．He's having a party.

Julia: It's nearly eight. If you want to catch the last train, you'd better go now.

Bill: Don't worry. It'll drive to the station.

Julia: In that case, let me go with you. And you drop me off at the city center. I'll buy some milk for my son. He'll come back home from work soon.

（　）22. What will Julia probably do?（2014）

A．See Bill off.　　B．Go shopping.

C．Drive Bill to the station.　　D．Pick up her son.

Mike: Hello, Mike's Service Station and Garage.

Alice: This is Alice Green speaking. Is my car ready yet?

Mike: I'm afraid we haven't been able to find out what's wrong with it. I think you need a new car, Miss Green.

Alice: Or maybe a new garage.

（　）23. What can we learn about Alice Green?（2014）

A. She wants to buy a new car at once.

B. She is pleased to have a new garage.

C. She has had her car repaired already.

D. She isn't satisfied with Mike's work.

When approaching the table, be sure to have your pen ready, book open, and pad ready. When taking the order, be sure to gather all information from each guest. Position numbers must identify customers. Always get the cooking degrees for meats.

（　）24. The above material is about the training of _____.（2014）

A. cooks　　B. waiters　　C. marketing assistants　　D. salesmen

Do not aim or point the torch toward the eyes of yourself or people around you. When in operation, do not place any objects in close range or in front of the torch's lens. Do not leave the torch on unattended. Do not touch the head of the torch during or after use. Keep away from children.

（　）25. The above is the _____ on a torch.（2014）

A. warnings　　B. expression　　C. warranty　　D. advertisement

（　）26. — What will the weather be like tomorrow? （2015）

— _____

A. It was raining outside.

B. What a fine day!

C. The weather forecast says it will be fine.

D. We'll fly kites if it is fine.

（　）27. — _____

— Let me see…my favourite program, *If You Are the One*, starts at eight. （2015）

A. Could you switch to the sports channel, honey?

B. What's on tonight?

C. What do you do at weekends?

D. I like cartoons. How about you?

（　）28. — I heard that Bill broke your window. Was he sorry for his fault?

— _____ （2015）

A. All right.　　B. Don't worry.　　C. Not really.　　D. No problem.

（　）29. — Why not put off the picnic until next month?

— _____ （2015）

A. A good match.　　B. A good idea.

C. Good joB.　　D. Good luck.

（　）30. — May I take your order, sir?

— What would you recommend?

— Baked fish and garlic chicken are always popular here.

— _____ （2015）

A．Help yourself.　　B．It's too cheap.

C．Take it easy.　　D．The garlic chicken, please.

Sarah：John, what brings you here?

John：I've had a headache for a couple of days and finally I decided I'd better come and see you.

Sarah：How are you feeling now?

（　）31. Where are Sarah and John probably? （2015）

A．At a teacher's office.　　B．At a doctor's office.

C．In a hotel.　　D．In a restaurant.

Man：　How much is it to rent a car?

Woman：It's $30 a day or $180 a week.

Man：　Is there any discount?

Woman：You can have a 10% discount if you pay by cash.

Man：　OK！I'd like to have one for two days.

（　）32. How much rent will the man pay by cash? （2015）

A．$54.　　B．$30.　　C．$60.　　D．$180.

Rick：I wonder if Susie will be here by 5 o'clock.

Julia：Her boyfriend said she left home at 4:30. She should be here at 5:10 and 5:15 at the latest.

（　）33. When did Susie leave home? （2015）

A．At 4:30.　　B．At 5:00.　　C．At 5:10.　　D．At 5:15.

Peter：I like growing flowers and playing basketball. What about you?

Sam：I'm interested in keeping pets and swimming.

（　）34. What are they talking about? （2015）

A．Swimming.　B．Flowers.　　C．Basketball.　　D．Hobbies.

Jenny：Excuse me, Professor Smith. May I ask you a few questions?

Smith：Yes, of course. But I'm sorry I have a meeting at ten. Why don't you call me at my office hours? That is 3 to 6 p.m. Monday, Tuesday and Friday.

（　）35. Why can't Professor Smith answer Jenny's question now? （2015）

A．He is busy now.　　B．He is too tired after the meeting.

C．He will go to his office right now.　D．It's not in his office hour.

Cashier

Full-time / Part-time

Town Supermarket is seeking five cashiers.

Cashiers must
- Be responsible
- Have some experience, but not necessary
- Be able to provide good customer service
- Be able to handle money efficiently

If interested, please contact *xy*@townsupermarket.com for more information

（　）36. The above is _____. （2015）

A. a notice　　B. a job application
C. a job advertisement　　D. a resume

Clerk： What can I do for you, madam?
Customer：I'd like to book a single room for the coming weekends.
Clerk： All right.
Customer：Can I take a credit card for the deposit?
Clerk： Of course.

（　）37. How will the madam put down the deposit? （2015）

A. By cash.　B. By credit carD.　C. By check.　D. Not mentioneD.

According to the U.S. Department of Labor, by 2018, there will be over 3,200,000 nurses. The average salary for a registered nurse is about $62,000. An experienced nurse may earn as much as $92,000 a year. However, only 6% of nurses are males.

（　）38. The above material shows the nursing profession for males is _____. （2015）

A. boring　B. unrewarding　C. depressing　D. promising

Dear Carol Xu,

On behalf of my family, I'd like to sincerely congratulate you on your recent graduation from Harvard University with your MBA…

Yours sincerely,
Alice Walker

（　）39. This is a letter of _____. （2015）

A. thanks　B. apology　C. congratulation　D. introduction

Kim：Your son seems to have made great progress in playing the piano. Does he attend any piano classes?

Lisa：Yes, he takes lessons twice a week, but from next week on, he will go to the class on Sunday evening too.

（　）40. How often will Lisa have piano lessons from next week on? （2015）

A. Once a week.　　B. Twice a week.
C. Three times a week.　　D. Four times a week.

专题三　长对话

一、考纲要求

补全对话（俗称长对话）是2014年对口单招考试的英语试题中新增题型，属于语言知识应用部分，占5分。本题向考生提供一段留出5个空白的不完整的对话，要求考生从所给的选项（共5项）中选出最佳答案，使补足后的对话意思通顺、前后连贯。

二、解题策略

这种题型把语言放在语境中，考查学生运用语言进行情景交际的能力。考生除应掌握必要的词汇、基本语法知识、习惯用语、固定搭配外，还要熟悉英语中有关日常生活及职业场景中常用交际用语的习惯表达和应答方式，了解作者意图，结合跨文化交际意识，进行全面分析，从而作出最佳选择。

做这类题时，考生首先要通读对话（包括对话前的备选项），将对话中人物的身份、关系、事件、事实细节等了解清楚，把握大意。根据对话所提供的语境以及上下文的逻辑联系，摸清谈话双方的意图，判断说话者的语气、语调，并设法进入“角色”。此类对话较短，对话长度一般在十句左右，相对简单，没有干扰项，一个萝卜一个坑。做题时，并不一定要完全按顺序进行，可以先易后难，逐步缩小选择范围。同时每选一个答案注意要用笔将其做上记号，以免干扰后面的选择。最后，进行复查，带选项进入对话中，看全篇对话是否连贯、合理、通顺。

样题

（2014年对口单招考试题）

在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的A、B、C、D、E五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．My new smart phone.	B．I’m crazy about it.	C．It works great, too.
D．True enough.	E．Even a child can use it.	

Diana: What are you playing with, Tim?

Tim: ___26___ Isn’t it wonderful?

Diana: Wow, it sure looks great.

Tim: ___27___ It has a high-quality camera, and it’s a videophone. The keyboard is easy to use. ___28___

Diana: Yeah, but a child couldn’t afford the high price, right?

Tim: ___29___ But this one is cheaper than most other models. The colors are so real! And

you can download tons of things onto it.

Diana: You are really into it, aren't you?

Tim: ___30___

【答案解析】

这篇对话的大意是：Tim 热衷于玩新买的智能手机，并且告诉 Diana 智能手机的一些功能等情况。

26. 选 A。从两方面分析，一是从上句的特殊疑问句中的 What，可推知此题应选 A，另一方面 Tim 在下文又讲到（Isn't it wonderful? ）中的 it，就是指上文 Tim 玩的东西事物，从这里我们确认选 A。

27. 选 C。从上文 Diana 对手机的评价中的 great，再看选择项 C（It works great, too.）中的 great, too，初步确定选 C。也可以从下文（It has a high-quality camera, and it's a videophone.）可知 Tim 讲的是手机的功能，对应选项 C 中的 works，所以从上下文的语境上看，只能选 C。

28. 选 E。上句中的 easy to use 是一个十分重要的信息短语，另外一个重要的线索是下一句（Yeah, but a child couldn't afford the high price, right?）中的 child，所以只有 E 是正确的。

29. 选 D。所填选项应该是对上个句子（...a child couldn't afford the high price, right?）的肯定判断，也是一个事实。另外，也可以从下句中的 but 看出，小孩子买不起是事实，但此款手机比其他的便宜。

30. 选 B。本题主要考查 be into sth. 这个短语，意思为“对……深感兴趣；给迷住”。故选项 B 才是合适的。

三、练习

练习 1 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A. I hate typing.	B. Well, I'm not quite satisfied with it.
C. What do you mean?	D. That's a good idea.
E. I like answering the phone.	

Rick: Good luck, Alison! How is the new job?

Alison: ___1___ Every day I meet lots of people. I do lots of typing, too.

Rick: Don't you like your new job?

Alison: Oh, I enjoy meeting. And ___2___ But ___3___

Rick: You can go to college, you know. Why don't you study for a year?

Alison: ___4___

Rick: I mean you can do a course in business studies. Then you can apply for lots of different jobs.

Alison: ___5___ I like studying.

练习 2 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项

中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．OK. Take care and don't eat any more fish.
B．Why weren't you here at the meeting?
C．That's all right.
D．We thought you might have had an accident or forgotten the day or something.
E．Yes, I suppose I should have done so.

Susan: Hello. Susan speaking.
John: Hello, Susan. John here. ____1____
Susan: Well, I'm terribly sorry, but I'm not feeling very well.
John: Is that all? ____2____
Susan: No, I'm sorry. I was sick all night. I think it must be the fish I ate last night.
John: Well, I think you should have at least phoned Kate and told her you weren't coming to the meeting.
Susan: ____3____ I'm sorry about that. Anyway, I think I'll be able to get into work tomorrow.
John: ____4____
Susan: I won't. Thanks for calling.
John: ____5____

练习 3 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．Are you ready to order, sir?　　B. We'll serve you the food as soon as possible.
C．Do you have a reservation?　　D．How would you like that cooked?
E．Would you care for something to drink?

Waitress: Welcome to Kasey's Kitchen. ____1____
Customer: Yes, the name is Paul Johnson.
Waitress: Ah, yes, here you are. Right this way. Here's the menu. I'll return in a moment to take your order.
Waitress: ____2____
Customer: Yes, I'll have a T-bone steak.
Waitress: ____3____
Customer: Well done, please.
Waitress: You have a choice of potatoes — French fried, mashed, or baked.
Customer: I'll have the baked potato.
Waitress: ____4____
Customer: A cup of black coffee, please.
Waitress: Anything else?
Customer: No, thanks.
Waitress: Very good, Sir. A T-bone steak, baked potato, a black coffee. ____5____
Customer: Thanks.

练习 4 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．Nice to meet you, too.　B．I will try my best to assist you if you need any help. C．Welcome to our office.　D．You are welcome. E．This is my first day at work.

Linda: Good morning! I am a new intern in our office.
Steve: Good morning! ＿1＿
Linda: Nice to meet you. My name is Linda Smith.
Steve: ＿2＿ I am Steve Brown.
Linda: ＿3＿
Steve: Well, hope you will enjoy your first day!
Linda: I am new to the work and I will appreciate your guidance.
Steve: ＿4＿
Linda: Thank you. It is very kind of you.
Steve: ＿5＿

练习 5 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．How about this one?	B．I think I'll take it.
C．Here you are.	D．What can I do for you?
E．May I try it on?	

Salesgirl: ＿1＿
Customer: I am going to buy a coat.
Salesgirl: ＿2＿
Customer: I'd like a green one, please.
Salesgirl: Here it is.
Customer: ＿3＿
Salesgirl: Of course.
Customer: Oh, this fits me perfectly, ＿4＿ What does it cost?
Salesgirl: Two hundred yuan.
（Giving the salesgirl two hundred yuan.）
Salesgirl: ＿5＿
Customer: Thank you. Good bye.

练习 6 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．But you must come and renew it if you want to keep it longer. B．Yes, you must. C．Can I help you?

D．How long can I keep it?
E．Do you have an English-Chinese Dictionary?

Mary:　Good morning!
Librarian: Good morning! ＿1＿
Mary:　Yes. ＿2＿
Librarian: Let me see. Ah, here it is.
Mary:　Thank you. ＿3＿
Librarian: Two weeks.
Mary:　Can I keep it a little longer?
Librarian: Yes, you can. ＿4＿
Mary:　Must I bring the book back for that?
Librarian: ＿5＿ And you mustn't lend it to others.
Mary:　All right. Goodbye!
Librarian: Bye!

练习 7 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．Never sleep better.
B．This is a developing area.
C．The only noise I heard last night was some birds at about two o'clock in the morning.
D．Now we are able to live in a little village.
E．The silence was wonderful for me.

A：I think I was very lucky to get the job. ＿1＿
B：But it won't be a little village forever. ＿2＿ There will be a lot more people here in about five years' time.
A：Yes, but there won't lie any factories, just two or three office buildings, and they will lie far behind that woodland over there.
B：Very nice. ＿3＿ It was so quiet!
A：I didn't sleep too well. I couldn't get used to silence. ＿4＿
B：Well, ＿5＿

练习 8 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．Is there anything I can do to help?　　B．What's the matter, Alice?
C．Don't worry about your lessons.　　D．How long will you be away?
E．But you must write a written request for leave to be away.

Alice's mother is very ill. She wishes to take a few days off from school, so she goes to her teacher, Mr. Green.

Alice:　Excuse me, Mr. Green. I'd like to take a few days off.

Mr. Green: ____1____

Alice: My mother's ill. I have to take care of her.

Mr. Green: Oh dear! I'm sorry to hear that. ____2____

Alice: No, thank you. My mother has caught a bad cold. She has a high fever and coughs day and night. The doctor says my mother has to be in hospital for a few days. I'd like to be with her.

Mr. Green: I understand. ____3____

Alice: I hope to be back next Wednesday.

Mr. Green: That's all right. ____4____

Alice: Thank you, Mr. Green. That's very kind of you. I'll write it immediately.

Mr. Green: ____5____ I'll certainly help you with them when you get back.

练习 9 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A. I hate the rain. B. Or was it in 1928?
C. Rain in the morning, then bits of sunshine, and then rain, rain, all day long.
D. Bad day, isn't it? E. I remember exactly the same July day in 1936.

M: ____1____

W: Isn't it terrible?

M: The rain…____2____

W: I don't like it at all. Do you?

M: So strange a day in July. ____3____

W: ____4____

M: Yes, I remember, too.

W: ____5____

M: Yes, it was.

练习 10 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．It's time to go.
B．I didn't know Eva was interested in photography.
C．There are a lot of photographers out there.
D．You mean she's coming to the game, too？
E．I just have to close up the shop.

Charley: Come on, Steve, ____1____

Steve: Wait a minute. ____2____

Charley: OK.

Steve: By the way, can we give my sister a ride home tonight？

Charley: Sure. ____3____

Steve:　Yeah. She wants to take some pictures.

Charley:　4

Steve:　Yeah. She'd like to work for a newspaper some day.

Charley:　But I think it might be difficult for her to succeed.　5

练习 11 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．How do you do？I'm Barbara Samuel.
B．I'm in charge of the science department.
C．I must consider joining a club sometime.
D．No, by no means.
E．Well, I guess I was lucky.

A:　Do you mind if I join you?

B:　1

A:　I'm Alan Hook. I work at Jude's Training College.

B:　2　And what do you do at the college?

A:　3

B:　Have you been there long?

A:　Just over a year. By the way, I have seen your picture in the paper recently.

B:　Ah, that must have been the national tennis competition last week.

A:　That's right — you won a cup.

B:　4　How about you? Do you play？

A:　I used to, but I'm out of practice these days.　5

B:　I think so. In this way you can have more guided training.

练习 12 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A．Look, it's happened five or six times in the past three months.
B．That's very strange.
C．What can I do for you?
D．And what's more, this isn't the first time.
E．I promise you it won't happen. again.

M:　Oh, madam.　1

W:　I'm sorry to say the bill you sent me was incorrect.

M:　Incorrect, madam？　2

W:　Yes, I know.　3

M:　Really, madam? I find it very hard to believe.

W:　4

M:　Ah. Well, I must apologize, madam. It's the new computer.

W:　Well, don't you think it's about time you got it working properly? It's most

inconvenient.

M: I agree entirely. I'm very sorry about it. ____5____

练习 13 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A. I don't think it is necessary.	B. I'm a total stranger here.
C. You can't miss it.	D. I beg your pardon?
E. It's just opposite the No.5 Department Store.	

W: Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest restaurant is?

M: ____1____

W: Where is the nearest restaurant, please?

M: Oh, the restaurant? The nearest one is the City Restaurant. ____2____

W: I'm... er... I'm afraid I don't quite...you see, ____3____

M: I see. Simply walk two blocks straight ahead, then turn left, and the City Restaurant is about 10 metres ahead. ____4____

W: Can I take a bus?

M: Of course you can. But ____5____ It's only a few minutes' walk.

W: Thank you very much.

M: Not at all.

练习 14 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A. How are the salesmen?
B. I think it's going to take a long time.
C. No, not really, it helps that I'm a woman.
D. There are ten men, ten car salesmen, and me.
E. I sold three cars this week and I was the top salesperson.

M: So you're the first woman they hired.

W: Yes. ____1____

M: And how are you doing？

W: ____2____

M: How do you do it？Do you do anything special？

W: ____3____ There are a lot of women looking at cars and buying cars by themselves. A lot of them feel more comfortable talking to a woman. And you know, I like to talk.

M: ____4____

W: Most of men are friendly. But there are two or three who don't talk to me. And at lunch, when they go out together, they never ask me.

M: It's going to take time.

W: Yeah, ____5____

练习 15 在本节中，你将读到一段对话，从方框中所给的 A、B、C、D、E 五个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项，并将答题卡上对应的字母涂黑。

A. I think he or she should be honest and reliable.
B. Please prepare a want ad for me.
C. What about the educational background？
D. Besides, he should be easy-going.
E. You mean practical working experience should be taken into consideration.

M: Our firm's going to hire a new sales person. ____1____

W: OK, sir. So what's your requirement for the new staff？

M: Well, first of all, ____2____

W: Yes, honesty is the essential quality.

M: ____3____ Because a qualified sales person should have the ability to deal with personal relationship with others.

W: Exactly. ____4____

M: College degree is a must. But theory or book knowledge is not the only thing.

W: ____5____

M: Right.

W: I've got that, and I'll put the want ad on the newspaper as soon as possible.

M: Thanks a lot.

专题四　完形填空

一、考纲要求

完形填空主要检测学生的语言综合能力，包括基础知识的掌握和运用，对整个文章逻辑联系的理解，在情景中辨析词义的能力以及词组短语搭配的使用能力等。

二、解题策略

1. 浏览全文，把握大意

浏览全文能获得更多的上下文提供的信息，并根据文章的内在逻辑意义、贯穿文章始终的主线以及作者行文的走向，把握文脉，调整并定位自己的解题思路，从而做出最终的判断。

2. 把握全文的时态

不同的时态，动词用不同的形式。

3. 识别短语，注意搭配

一类短语是由“动词 + 介词”，或“动词 + 副词”构成，在现代英语中，这类词组很多而且实用性强、结构简练、使用灵活、表达生动，如 look forward to，keep an eye on，catch one's eyes 等；还有一类使用极广的是介词短语，如 with regard to，at the age of 等。如果平时能注意词组、短语的整体记忆，掌握它们的搭配规律，在做完形填空时就能得心应手，减少失误，提高完形填空的命中率。

4. 运用语法，理顺关系

语法知识是指导完形填空的法宝，词汇是根据语法规则确定各自的位置，有了语法规则，文章才能有条不紊、顺理成章。如介词后的代词必然是宾格；物质名词一般不用复数；形容词必须放在不定代词后；行为动词的否定和疑问应由助动词 do 构成；情态动词只能与不带 to 的动词连用等。

5. 细心检查，避免疏漏

完形填空做完后最关键的一点是要细心检查。有些考生为自己全部填出了而沾沾自喜，根本没想到不是缺了“ing”就是少了“s”，或是忘了加“ed”，这是很可惜的，因为从意思上他是理解了、看懂了题目，但因粗心而大意失荆州。

样题

There were some new soldiers on the ground. They were being trained in modern __1__ of fighting by their two teachers. They __2__ how an unarmed（未武装）man could trick（欺骗）an

armed man and take his weapon away from him. First one teacher took a knife away from __3__, using only hands, and then he took a weapon away from him in the __4__ way.

After the lesson, and __5__ they went on to train the young soldiers do these things themselves, both of the teachers asked them lots of questions and want to see __6__ they had understood what they had been shown. One of the questions __7__: "Well, you now know __8__ an unarmed man can do against a man with a weapon. Now suppose that you are on duty on a big bridge __9__ at night, and you have a weapon. Suddenly you see an unarmed soldier __10__ towards you. He wants to get your weapon. What will you do?"

（　）1. A. exercises	B. clothes	C. ways	D. weapons	
（　）2. A. shown	B. taught	C. were found	D. were shown	
（　）3. A. other	B. the other	C. others	D. another	
（　）4. A. different	B. same	C. difficult	D. modern	
（　）5. A. when	B. until	C. before	D. after	
（　）6. A. how fast	B. how well	C. hoe long	D. how nice	
（　）7. A. would be	B. is	C. was	D. were	
（　）8. A. which	B. that	C. how	D. what	
（　）9. A. yourself	B. lonely	C. along	D. alone	
（　）10. A. comes	B. came	C. coming	D. to come	

【答案解析】

1. 答案为 C。根据全文大意及上下文 They were being trained 可以判断出新兵是在训练现代战斗方法。

2. 答案为 D。该句主语 They 指新兵，用被动语态 were shown。且下文第 6 空格那句话有提示 had been shown.

3. 答案为 B。两者中的一个用 one，另一个用 the other。

4. 答案为 B。In the same way 是固定短语“以同样的方式”。

5. 答案为 C。在教官们对新兵们继续进行训练之前，先问了新兵一些问题，故填 before 。

6. 答案为 B。这里教官想了解的是新兵对所学知识的理解程度。

7. 答案为 C。该句主语是 one，且全句用的过去时态，故填 was 。

8. 答案为 D。what 引导宾语从句，并在从句中作 do 的宾语。

9. 答案为 D。本题考察的是 lonely 和 alone 的用法。Lonely 是形容词“孤独的、寂寞的”；alone 是副词，“单独地”、“独自”。此处指“晚上独自一人在桥上值班”。

10. 答案为 C。根据下一句 He wants to get your weapon 的语境可以判断，这位没有武器的士兵是朝你走来，故填 coming，现在分词作宾语补足语，表示正在进行的动作。

三、练习

Passage 1

When I was going to work today, my 16-year-old daughter came over and gave me a big hug and kiss.

I asked her what she __1__. She replied, "Nothing, Mum. You always wish us to have a good day before we leave the house, but I was __2__ about who wishes you to have a good day and lets you know how much you are __3__." I am so touched by the love and understanding from my children. Last night my 15-year-old son asked me __4__ he could get a summer job in order to help us pay our bills. Unfortunately, in our area, he must be 16.

When I told him "no", he said that he could help our __5__ cut the grass with our machine. Both of my children depend on me __6__ because I am a single parent, but just when I think I won't be able to provide for them, they come up with ways to help out. I completely understand that I will still, have to manage to pay the bills as I don't want my children to take up the slack. They are children and have enough time to do with school and the volunteer work they do with the homeless. But the fact that they offered to help without anyone __asking touches me deeply.

When my daughter was two, I remember when I was at the front door, fussing（烦恼）at her __7__ me to the door. She had a bag that she was holding __8__. I said, "We don't have time for this." She said, " Fill it with love, Mum." I bent down and __9__ her and then kissed her and said "Thank you".

From that moment on she would bring the __10__ and I would fill it with love before leaving for work. Today she brought me the love.

() 1. A. wanted B. intended C. liked D. expected
() 2. A. forgetting B. complaining C. thinking D. talking
() 3. A. supported B. cared C. respected D. loved
() 4. A. where B. if C. that D. how
() 5. A. relatives B. friends C. teachers D. neighbors
() 6. A. so much B. so little C. so well D. so often
() 7. A. blocking B. hurrying C. interrupting D. following
() 8. A. tight B. open C. closed D. loose
() 9. A. praised B. patted C. held D. hugged
() 10. A. bag B. toy C. box D. case

Passage 2

What do you usually use mobile phones __1__? Sending text messages for fun? Playing games? Well mobile phones can do __2__ more than that. During this year's Asian tsunami（海啸）, mobile phones saved many __3__. More than 10,000 international phones were __4__ when the tsunami hit. Police sent text messages to them and found more than 2,000. But how? People __5__ the signal and found out __6__ the tourists were. So, how can __7__ so small be so smart? Well here's how! When you turn the phone on, it tries to find a signal. This __8__ comes from the telephone network. If you have a signal you can see it on the phone's screen. Sometimes, if the signal is weak, __9__ can be difficult to make a phone call. When the phone is finding a signal, it also sends a message to the telephone network. This message tells the station where the phone is. When you start to make a phone call, the telephone

network tells telecommunications offices where you are. The office will find out who you're calling then put you __10__ to your friend!

() 1. A. as　B. with　C. for　D. to
() 2. A. very　B. so　C. far　D. little
() 3. A. lives　B. animals　C. houses　D. troubles
() 4. A. doing　B. working　C. mending　D. using
() 5. A. heard　B. listened　C. followed　D. examined
() 6. A. how　B. where　C. what　D. why
() 7. A. something　B. nothing　C. everything　D. anything
() 8. A. sign　B. signal　C. mark　D. word
() 9. A. he　B. it　C. they　D. you
() 10. A. off　B. up　C. on　D. through

Passage 3

Life in the twenty-first century will be very __1__. Many changes will take place, but what will the changes be?

The population is growing __2__. There will be many people in the world and most of them will live __3__ than people in the twentieth century.

Computers will be much smaller and __4__ and there will be at least one in every home. And __5__ studies will be one of the important subjects in school then.

People will work __6__ and they will have more free time for sports, watching TV and travelling. Travelling will be much easier and cheaper. And many more people will go to __7__ countries for holidays.

There will be changes in our __8__, too. Maybe no one will eat meat every day, instead, they eat more fruit and vegetables. Maybe people will be healthier. Work in the future will be different, too. __9__ and hard work can be done by robots. Because of this, __10__ will not have enough work to do .This will be a problem.

() 1. A. interesting　B. hard　C. different　D. beautiful
() 2. A. slowly　B. fast　C. quietly　D. suddenly
() 3. A. long　B. longer　C. happy　D. lucky
() 4. A. more useful　B. useful　C. helpful　D. less useful
() 5. A. science　B. maths　C. English　D. computer
() 6. A. fewer hours　B. more hours
C. eight hours　D. more than eight hours
() 7. A. rich　B. other　C. poor　D. small
() 8. A. food　B. clothes　C. fruit　D. drinks
() 9. A. Safe　B. Easy　C. Simple　D. Dangerous
() 10. A. a few people　B. all the people　C. many people　D. some people

Passage 4

Mr. Green was ill and went to the hospital. A doctor __1__ and said, "Well, Mr. Green, you are going to __2__ some injections, and you'll feel much better. A nurse will come __3__ give you the first one this evening, and then you'll __4__ get another one tomorrow evening." __5__ a young nurse came to Mr. Green's bed and said to him, "I am going to give you your __6__ injection now, Mr. Green. Where do you want it?"

The old man was __7__. He looked at the nurse for a __8__, then he said, "__9__ has ever let me choose that before. Are you really going to let me choose now?"

"Yes, Mr. Green," the nurse answered. She was in a hurry. "Where do you want it?"

"Well, then," the old man answered __10__, "I want it in your left arm, please."

() 1. A. looked for him B. looked him over
C. looked after him D. looked him up

() 2. A. get B. give C. make D. hold

() 3. A. so B. but C. or D. and

() 4. A. must B. can C. had better D. have to

() 5. A. In the morning B. In the afternoon
C. In the end D. In the evening

() 6. A. first B. one C. two D. second

() 7. A. confident B. surprised C. full D. hungry

() 8. A. hour B. minutes C. year D. moment

() 9. A. Somebody B. Anybody C. Nobody D. People

() 10. A. with a smile B. in time
C. in surprise D. with tears in his eyes

Passage 5

Today was a very important day. France played __1__ Senegal（塞内加尔）in the opening match of the World Cup. Soccer fans were very __2__ watching the match on TV. To our great surprise, France was __3__.

Today football has become very __4__ in China after a 44-year wait. "China is in the World Cup for the first time, __5__ we should support them!" Said some people. In our school many students enjoy playing it. My __6__ and I often go to the football field after class.

This afternoon there was a __7__ football match in our school. __8__ team played against No.1 Middle School. Though they were all very big and strong, it was a __9__ game between the two teams with the result 0-0 last time. Today our school played much better.

In the first half of the match __10__ team kicked a goal, but in the second, Li Ming from our school kicked a goal. We won 1-0, at last. I'm so pleased. I can't get to sleep tonight.

() 1. A. with B. against C. to D. at

() 2. A. good at B. pleased to C. interested in D. boring in

（　）3. A. beaten　　B. won　　C. beat　　D. fail
（　）4. A. welcome　　B. popular　　C. weak　　D. strong
（　）5. A. or　　B. but　　C. so　　D. yet
（　）6. A. students　　B. teachers　　C. classmates　　D. parents
（　）7. A. happy　　B. wonderful　　C. funny　　D. famous
（　）8. A. Their　　B. Her　　C. Your　　D. Our
（　）9. A. mistake　　B. luck　　C. draw　　D. game
（　）10. A. neither　　B. either　　C. both　　D. none

Passage 6

It's never easy to admit you are in the wrong. We all __1__ to know the art of apology. Think how often you've done wrong. Then count how many __2__ you've expressed clearly you were sorry. You can't go to bed with an easy mind if you do __3__ about it.

A doctor friend, Mr. Lied, told me about a man who came to him with different kinds of signs: headaches, heart __4__ and insomnia（失眠）. __5__ some careful exams, Mr. Lied found nothing wrong with him and said, "If you don't tell me what's __6__ you, I can't help you." The man admitted he was cheating his brother of his inheritance（遗产）. Then and there the clever doctor __7__ the man write to his brother and __8__ his money. As soon as the __9__ was put into the post box, the man suddenly cried. "Thank you," he said to the doctor, "I think I've got well."

An apology can not only save a broken relationship but also make it __10__. If you can think of someone who should be given an apology from you. Do something about it right now.

（　）1. A. decide　　B. have　　C. need　　D. try
（　）2. A. mistakes　　B. people　　C. ways　　D. times
（　）3. A. something　　B. anything　　C. nothing　　D. everything
（　）4. A. trouble　　B. matter　　C. illness　　D. problem
（　）5. A. Before　　B. After　　C. Till　　D. Since
（　）6. A. well　　B. good　　C. bad　　D. wrong
（　）7. A. made　　B. helped　　C. saw　　D. let
（　）8. A. returned　　B. gave　　C. kept　　D. paid
（　）9. A. paper　　B. box　　C. money　　D. letter
（　）10. A. never　　B. worse　　C. stronger　　D. harder

Passage 7

Sometimes you may envy others when they do a __1__ job than you. It is not strange. If you treat envy in a right way, it can __2__ you to move ahead. But if you are always envying others, then it is __3__, because much envy may make you lose your own life in the end and you have __4__ time to do something you are good at.

Why do you waste time to envy others? Envy __5__ can change anything. Why not spend more time and try your best to __6__ others? It is up to you.

Of course it is easier said than __7__. Maybe you hope not to envy others, but you don't know how to do it. Maybe you tried many times but __8__ failed. Please don't lose heart. Set a goal for yourself, and work hard to realize it. Then you have no time to envy others. When you __9__, you don't need others any more. Isn't true?

Believe yourself, it is also very __10__ to you.

() 1. A. had B. good C. worse D. better
() 2. A. stop B. help C. make D. let
() 3. A. lucky B. good C. dangerous D. badly
() 4. A. much B. more C. a little D. no
() 5. A. them B. it C. themselves D. itself
() 6. A. catch B. catch up with C. fall behind D. help
() 7. A. thought B. made C. stopped D. done
() 8. A. no B. less C. hardly D. always
() 9. A. are happy B. work hard C. succeed D. fail again
() 10. A. possible B. important C. useless D. dangerous

Passage 8

Who designed he first helicopter (直升机)? Who __1__ one of the most famous pictures in the world? Who knew more about the human body than most __2__? There is an answer __3__ all these questions — Leonardo de Vinci (达·芬奇).

Leonardo may have been the greatest genius __4__ have ever known. He lived in Italy round the year 1500, but many of his inventions seem modern to us today. For example, one of his notebooks has drawings of a helicopter. Of course, he couldn't __5__ a helicopter with the things he had. But scientists say his idea would have worked.

But Leonardo __6__ an inventor. He was one of the greatest artists of his day. By the time he was twenty years old, he was called a master painter, and as he got older he became __7__ more famous. Sometimes he drew a hand ten different ways __8__ he was ready to paint.

Many of Leonardo's wonderful paintings are still with __9__ today. You may know one of his most famous works — the __10__ woman known as the Mona Lisa.

() 1. A. took B. made C. painted D. invented
() 2. A. artists B. doctors C. painters D. people
() 3. A. to B. of C. for D. from
() 4. A. the scientists B. the artists C. the world D. people
() 5. A. draw B. paint C. work D. build
() 6. A. was just B. wasn't just C. wasn't D. was no longer
() 7. A. less B. no C. even D. very
() 8. A. before B. after C. because D. when

（　）9. A. him　　B. us　　C. them　　D. you
（　）10. A. interesting　　B. crying　　C. smiling　　D. surprising

Passage 9

The computer is fast, and never makes a mistake, while people are too slow, and full of mistakes sometimes. That's __1__ people often say when they talk about computers. For over a quarter of a century, scientists have been __2__ better and better computers. Now a computer can __3__ a lot of everyday jobs wonderfully. It is __4__ used in factories, hospitals, post offices and airports. A computer can report, decide and control in almost __5__ field. Many computer scientists are thinking of __6__ the computer "think" like a man. With the help of a person, a computer can __7__ pictures, write music, talk with people, play chess, recognize voices, translate languages and so on. Perhaps computers will __8__ really think and feel. Do you think the people will be afraid when they find that the computer is too clever to listen to and serve the people? No, people will __9__ better use of the computers in the future. Man is __10__ the master of the computer. The computer works only with the help of man. It cannot take the place of man.

（　）1. A. that　　B. what　　C. how　　D. why
（　）2. A. loving　　B. taking　　C. making　　D. thinking
（　）3. A. have　　B. get　　C. do　　D. offer
（　）4. A. widely　　B. wide　　C. great　　D. deeply
（　）5. A. either　　B. all　　C. both　　D. every
（　）6. A. producing　　B. ordering　　C. making　　D. building
（　）7. A. take　　B. look at　　C. draw　　D. put
（　）8. A. one day　　B. a day　　C. any day　　D. the other day
（　）9. A. chose　　B. get　　C. take　　D. make
（　）10. A. often　　B. never　　C. always　　D. sometimes

Passage 10

Friends are very important in our everyday life. Everyone __1__ friends. We all like to feel close to someone. It is nice to have a friend to talk, laugh, and do things with. __2__, sometimes we need to be alone. We don't always want people __3__. But we would feel lonely if we __4__ had a friend.

No two people are just the same. Friends __5__ don't get on well. That doesn't mean that they no longer like each other. Most of the time they will make up（言归于好）and become __6__ again.

Sometimes friends move away. Then we feel very __7__. We miss them very much, but we can __8__ them and write to them. And we can make new friends. It is encouraging to find out how much we like new people when we get to know them.

There's more good news for people who have friends. They live longer than people who don't. Why? Friends can make us feel happy. __9__ happy helps you stay well. Or it could be

just knowing that someone cares. If someone cares about you, you take __10__ care of yourself.

() 1. A. loves B. hates C. needs D. becomes
() 2. A. Hardly B. Nearly C. Suddenly D. Certainly
() 3. A. alone B. away C. all over D. around
() 4. A. ever B. never C. just D. really
() 5. A. always B. sometimes C. often D. usually
() 6. A. friendly B. good C. pleased D. friends
() 7. A. angry B. sad C. happy D. alone
() 8. A. call B. ask C. tell D. talk with
() 9. A. Smelling B. Being C. Sounding D. Making
() 10. A. less B. better C. little D. no

Passage 11

Brownie and Spotty were neighbour dogs who met every day to play together. Like pairs of dogs you can find in any neighborhood, these two dogs loved each other and played __1__ so often that they had worn（踩出）a path through the grass of the field between their own houses.

One evening, Brownie's family __2__ that Brownie hadn't returned home. They went looking for him with no __3__. Brownie didn't appear the next day, and, despite their __4__ to find him, by the next week he was still missing.

Curiously, Spotty showed up at Brownie's house alone, barking. Busy with their own lives, they just ignored（to pay no attention to）the nervous little neighbour dog.

Finally, one morning Spotty refused to take "no" for an answer. Spotty followed Ted about, barking strongly, then running towards a nearby wood, as if to say, "__5__ me! It's urgent!"

Ted followed the anxious Spotty. The little dog led the man to a wild spot a half mile from the house. There Ted found his beloved Brownie __6__, one of his hind legs stuck in a steel leg hold trap. Horrified, Ted now wished he'd taken Spotty's earlier requirement seriously. Then Ted noticed something quite remarkable.

Spotty had done more than simply __7__ Brownie's owner to his trapped friend. In a circle around the__8__ dog, Ted found some dog food — which was later recognized as the remains of every meal Spotty had been fed that __9__!

Spotty had been visiting Brownie __10__, in a single-minded quest to keep his friend alive by offering his own comfort. Spotty had obviously stayed with Brownie to protect him from being hurt, snuggling（依偎）with him at night to keep him warm and touching him gently with its nose to keep his spirits up.

Brownie's leg was treated by a veterinarian（兽医）and he recovered. For many years afterwards, the two families watched the faithful friends frolicking（嬉戏）and chasing each other down that well-worn path between their houses.

() 1. A. together B. wildly C. separately D. happily
() 2. A. watched B. heard C. feared D. noticed

（　）3. A. hope	B. success	C. failure	D. information	
（　）4. A. wishes	B. demands	C. efforts	D. worries	
（　）5. A. Love	B. Hit	C. Forgive	D. Follow	
（　）6. A. alive	B. dead	C. brave	D. sleepy	
（　）7. A. asked	B. ordered	C. informed	D. led	
（　）8. A. injured	B. defeated	C. frightened	D. worried	
（　）9. A. month	B. day	C. evening	D. week	
（　）10. A. anxiously	B. regularly	C. sometimes	D. calmly	

Passage 12

Many college students take part-time jobs in their spare time. Whether it is good or bad is still under __1__.

Some people believe that taking part-time jobs certainly is __2__ for students in some ways. To begin with, students can learn how to get along with other people and know __3__ better. Furthermore, to take part-time jobs provides the students __4__ opportunities to put what they have learned from books into practice. Finally, students can make some __5__, which can help their parents.

However, there are __6__. Firstly, some students spend too much time doing part-time jobs while not concentrating on their studies. Secondly, when taking part-time jobs, some students may be distracted from their studies by the __7__ lives in society. Thirdly, some students may be __8__ or hurt by their employers, because they don't know how to protect themselves.

As for me, I __9__ the view that college students need to step out and take some part-time jobs. __10__, it opens them a window to know about society, which is good for their future.

（　）1. A. water	B. school	C. discussion	D. thought
（　）2. A. bad	B. good	C. important	D. necessary
（　）3. A. school	B. job	C. human	D. society
（　）4. A. with	B. for	C. as	D. of
（　）5. A. plans	B. decisions	C. money	D. changes
（　）6. A. chances	B. purposes	C. dreams	D. problems
（　）7. A. difficult	B. happy	C. colorful	D. rich
（　）8. A. refused	B. cheated	C. burnt	D. killed
（　）9. A. share	B. hate	C. remember	D. hope
（　）10.A. In face	B. In general	C. After all	D. At last

Passage 13

Green tea is no doubt __1__, but then, it also has an unpleasant taste. It is this taste of green tea that makes many people __2__ sugar or cream to it. __3__ such ingredients（成分）do sweeten the tea, a lot of calories are also added to it. Besides, our busy schedule __4__ gives us time to prepare the recommended 5～7 cups of green tea every day. Green tea pills, __5__, give

us the various health benefits of green tea, and we don't even have to worry about its __6__ or our precious time.

Green tea pills are made of powder, __7__ 250 to 500 of green tea extracted (提取) in each pill. As these pills are in concentrated form, some argue that they are much more __8__ than the green tea itself. These pills are __9__ ideal for people who don't have time to think about their health, let alone (更不用说) preparing tea, and those who are not used __10__ tea.

() 1. A. health B. healthy C. unhealth D. unhealthy
() 2. A. eat B. drink C. add D. take
() 3. A. So B. As C. While D. Even
() 4. A. also B. often C. always D. seldom
() 5. A. on the one hand B. on the other hand
C. in addition D. furthermore
() 6. A. taste B. sugar C. smell D. water
() 7. A. with B. have C. of D. on
() 8. A. benefit B. beneficial C. harm D. harmful
() 9. A. thought B. suggested C. advised D. considered
() 10. A. to drink B. to drinking C. drinking D. to be drunk

Passage 14

Is the world really going mad? The other day I was sitting in a small restaurant __1__ a quiet drink and a talk with a few friends, when suddenly I found that almost __2__ in the restaurant was smoking. It wasn't long __3__ the whole room was filled with smoke. I asked politely for permission to open a window to stop myself dying.

Nowadays air pollution is something that we hardly question any more. However, I still can't walk down the streets in any of the big cities without thinking that people are suffering from the air pollution. It is time for the government to introduce emission controls on all cars and __4__ the public transport system to encourage people to __5__ their cars at home. A friend of mine takes flying lessons each morning and it really makes him __6__ when he climbs about the smog layer (烟雾层) and down into it and thinks: "I'm breathing that! This kind of pollution results from the bad management of resources. Waste things should be treated properly." House building, road construction and industrial development are all earthmoving operations and can change the balances of __7__ that have been created over millions of years. I would like to __8__ serious studies done on all these main works before they are built. Also, there should be __9__ national parks set up to keep the most beautiful parts of our countries in their natural __10__.

() 1. A. have B. had C. having D. have had
() 2. A. nobody B. everybody C. somebody D. all
() 3. A. ago B. after C. before D. now
() 4. A. increase B. reduce C. improve D. raise
() 5. A. wash B. repair C. drive D. leave

（　）6. A. sick　　B. tired　　C. foolish　　D. excited
（　）7. A. life　　B. mind　　C. human beings　　D. plants
（　）8. A. see　　B. start　　C. enjoy　　D. pay
（　）9. A. few　　B. any　　C. more　　D. no
（　）10. A. sky　　B. rivers　　C. soil　　D. air

Passage 15

School was over and I was both mentally and physically tired. I sat at the very front of the bus because of my anxiety to get home. Sitting at the front makes you stand out like a shiny coin in a pile of dull pennies.

Janie, the driver, tries to break the __1__ atmosphere by striking the match of conversation. I try to mind my manners and __2__ listen, but usually I am too busy thinking about my day. On this day, __3__, her conversation was worth listening to.

"My father's sick," she said to no one in __4__. I could see the anxiety and fear in her eyes. With a sudden change of attitude and interest, I asked, "What's wrong with him?"

With her eyes wet and her voice tight from fighting the tears, she responded, "Heart trouble."Her eyes lowered as she __5__. "I've already lost my mum, so I don't think I can stand losing him."

I couldn't respond. I was in shock. My heart ached for her. I sat on the old, smelly seat thinking of the great pain my own mother was thrown into when her father died. I saw how hard it was, yet still is, for her. I wouldn't like anyone to go through that.

Suddenly I realized Janie wasn't only a bus driver. That was __6__ her job. She had a whole world of family and concerns too. I had never thought of her as __7__ but a driver.

I suddenly felt very __8__. I realized I had only thought of people as far as what their purposes were in my life. I paid no attention to Janie because she was a bus driver. I had judged her by her job and brushed her off as __9__.

For all I know, I'm just another person in someone else's world, and many not even be important. I __10__ not have been so selfish and self-centred. Everyone has places to go, people to see and appointments（约会）to keep. Understanding people is an art.

（　）1. A. unpopular　　B. uncomfortable　　C. unusual　　D. unforgettable
（　）2. A. politely　　B. devotedly　　C. carelessly　　D. sincerely
（　）3. A. however　　B. therefore　　C. thus　　D. otherwise
（　）4. A. surprise　　B. common　　C. silence　　D. particular
（　）5. A. told　　B. lasted　　C. repeated　　D. continued
（　）6. A. almost　　B. nearly　　C. ever　　D. just
（　）7. A. something　　B. anything　　C. nothing　　D. everything
（　）8. A. sad　　B. embarrassed　　C. selfish　　D. worried
（　）9. A. unfit　　B. unselfish　　C. unnecessary　　D. unimportant
（　）10. A. must　　B. may　　C. can　　D. should

专题五　阅读理解

一、考纲要求

1. 能阅读考纲附录三“话题项目表”范围内常见题材的英语材料，并回答相关问题。材料包括与日常生活及职业场景相关的短文、公告、产品说明、信函等。考生应能：

（1）理解一般文章的篇章结构；

（2）理解文中具体信息；

（3）理解作者的观点、意图和态度；

（4）根据上下文和构词法猜测词义；

（5）根据文中信息进行简单的判断、推理。

2. 能翻译阅读理解中出现的难度适当的英文句子。

二、解题策略

2014年对口单招考试的英语试题中阅读理解占40%，是试卷中所占比例最大的一部分。阅读理解能力的高低，是能否取得英语好成绩的关键所在。阅读理解的重要性已被广大英语教师和考生所共识。下面通过对近年来阅读理解题的分析，帮助考生熟悉常见题型，掌握解题策略和技巧。

1. 主旨大意题

此类题型是英语考纲要求考生必须掌握的，属于必考题型，考查考生通过阅读理解，总结归纳，找出文章中心主旨的能力。此类题属于深层题，常出现在文章的第一道题或最后一道题中。

一般来说，要做好这类题，考生必须从文章整体考虑，把握篇章逻辑结构，通过略读（skimming），以搜寻各段主题句（topic sentence）或中心思想（main idea）为目标，快速扫视全文，尤其注意文章的首尾两段。文章的主题句或中心思想常在第一段或最后一段。某一段的主题句也常出现在段首或段尾。说明文、议论文等的主题句多放在文章开头，因此要寻找这类文章的主旨大意就需要研究文章首句。有时文章的主题句安排在结尾，作为对全篇的总结，要注意一些表示归纳关系的信号词，如in short，in a word，in brief，in sum，all in all，to sum up，to conclude等。

最佳标题（the best title）是一篇文章的“文眼”，实际上是对文章大意的最简洁的概括与提炼，可以是一个短语词组，它除能概括文章的中心主旨外，还有吸引读者，引发阅读兴趣的任务。

另外，还需要理解作者的写作目的（purpose）及作者态度（attitude），此类题型实际上也是主旨大意题的一种变体，也频繁出现在阅读理解中。

主旨大意题题干常见的问句形式有：

What is the main idea of this passage?

What does the passage mainly talk about / discuss?

The passage is about _____.

What is the best title for this passage?

What does the writer want to tell us?

Which can express the purpose of the writer according to the passage?

What is the author's main purpose in this passage?

2. 细节事实题

细节事实题是考查考生对文章（或某一段落）中某些特定细节或重要事实的辨认能力，属于阅读理解中的表层题，题目比较简单。这类题在对口单招考试的考试阅读理解题中占的比例较大，做好这类题是确保基础分的关键。同时，弄清细节，正确获取信息，也是把握文章主旨的前提。因此，要特别重视做好这类题。

一般而言，要做好这类题，考生只需要扫读（scanning）原文，捕捉相关信息词，掌握短文细节内容，仔细比较所给选项与文中细节一点一滴的区别，在准确理解文中细节的前提下，最后确定最佳答案，这是解题的关键。应抓住六个“ W ”和一个“ H ”，就是边读边用铅笔做些标记，把 What（事件），Who（人物）, Which（哪个、哪些），When（时间），Where（地点），Why（原因），How（经过）画出来。抓住了六个“ W ”和一个“ H ”，就可以根据题干或选项中的关键词直接找到现成的答案。细节事实题还要十分注意句子的非主干成分，如定语、状语、补语等，这些成分都是出题者常进行误导的落脚点。

另外，还有一些细节事实题需要考生对文章的某些细节、事实及观点进行分析、综合、判断，最后确认最佳答案。例如，内容排序、图文转换、数字转换、表格理解等题型。内容排序题要先仔细观察选项，采用“ 首尾定位法 ”，迅速缩小选择范围，进而通过具体细节信息比较进行排除和选择。图文转换题，先找出描写图形的句段，然后按“ 文 ”索“ 图 ”，迅速锁定相关图形；也可采用“ 图形标示法 ”，先在图形中标出相应的内容，以方便做题。数字转换题，关键是要弄清各数据间的逻辑关系，选准比较的数据，弄清单位换算关系，确定计算方法，问题便迎刃而解了。表格理解题，需要对表格的项目进行比较，找准正确的计算关系尤为重要。

细节事实题题干常见的问句形式有：

What / Who / When / Where / Why / How many / How much…?

Which of the following statements is NOT mentioned in the passage?

Which of the following sentences is NOT true?

Which of the following is true except…?

Which of the following is true?

According to the passage, which of the following sentences is TRUE?

According to the passage, which of the orders is correct？

3. 词义猜测题

词义猜测题是考查考生通过上下文语境进行逻辑推理，也可通过语法进行分析判断，

对某些生词做出推测和判断的能力。因而，所考单词的意义通常超出大纲范围。猜词是应用英语的重要能力，也是对口单招考试中常见的题型。

要做好此类题，考生要注意以下几点：

（1）要熟练掌握大纲词汇，平时注意积累生词和短语，掌握一些构词法；

（2）要把词放到句子里，把句子放在句群里；

（3）注意词、句的位置，找出生词与上下文之间的逻辑关系；

（4）要善于借助关联词、代词及词性、同义词法、反义词法等进行判断选择。常见的过渡关联词有：表转折关系的连词或副词，如 but，while，however 等；表因果关系的连词或副词，如 because，as，since，for，so，thus，as a result，of course，therefore 等；表同义或释义关系的常由 is，or，that is，in other words，be called 或破折号等来表示。

另外，有时考题中出现代词 it，they，them，one，ones 等，要求指出所指代的确切含义。这时，需要对照上下文，掌握就近指代的原则，一般而言，代词所指代的内容通常在本句或其上句之中，再注意从内容意义上和语法逻辑上等确定最佳答案。

词义猜测题题干常见的问句形式有：

The word / phrase "…" means / refers to _____.

The word "…" could be best replaced by _____.

From the passage, we can infer the word "…" is closest in meaning to _____.

Which of the following is the nearest meaning to"…"？

What does the word "…" in paragraph … mean?

By saying "…", the author means _____.

4．推理判断题

推理判断题主要考查考生根据材料所提供的已知信息，做出合理的推断或判断的逻辑思维能力。作者将某些数据、知识、逻辑推理、自己的观点、意图等渗透在文章的字里行间，有时可能比较明显，有时可能比较含蓄、隐晦，需要仔细琢磨、揣测才能得知，有时还需借助常识进行判断。

要做好此类题，关键在于读懂原文，完全理解文中的细节信息，根据题干中的关键词或选项中的线索找到原文的相关句，严格按照阅读材料中所提供的信息进行推理，只有以此为前提的训练才是有意义的。有些问题可能不用看全篇，只需要根据选项中的线索找到原文中与之相关的一句话或几句话，然后判断出最佳答案。有时候还得借助于语法知识来进行判断，比如，" 虚拟语气 " 表达的与事实相反的情况；" too...to do " 结构隐含的否定情况等。

推理判断题题干常见的问句形式有：

We can infer / imply / learn from this passage that _____.

We can infer that _____.

It can be inferred / concluded from the passage that _____.

The passage implies / suggests that _____.

From the passage we can draw the conclusion that _____.

The author believes that _____.

It is most likely to be inferred from the passage that _____.

5. 句子翻译题

近几年，句子翻译题作为对口单招考试中阅读理解的一部分，题干句子来自阅读理解的短文，属于英译汉。由于英汉两种语言在词法、句法上的差异，翻译并不是简单的一对一逐字逐句对译，而是根据具体情况，灵活地运用各种翻译技巧，在不偏离原文意思的前提下，做必要的调整和改变，使译文最大限度地再现原文的意义，又使它符合汉语的表达习惯。

对于对口单招考试的学生来说，英译汉相对于汉译英来说简单些，因为只要有一些基础的短语，句式知识，能读懂句子中的大部分单词，基本上就能写出符合句意的中文。当然，对于一些较长句子的翻译，建议可以直译的就直译，如果不能直译，可凭借各种翻译技巧，例如，增译、省译、转换、拆句、合并、正译、反译、倒置、插入、重组等，在不偏离原文意思的前提下，对句子的结构做一些变动。因此，正确的做法是先弄清句子的结构，区分句子成分，分步翻译，然后在不影响原意的前提下，直译为主，意译为辅，结合上下文重新安排汉语的表达顺序，最后再整合成完整的一句话，使之符合汉语表达习惯。

样题

阅读下列材料，从题后所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳答案。

样题 1

Now there are many homes around the lake. People often use chemicals in their gardens. They use other chemicals inside their houses for cleaning or killing insects（昆虫）. There are also many businesses. Businesses use chemicals in their machines or shops. ……

（　）“Chemicals” in the story means _____.

A．化学家　　B．污染品　　C．药品　　D．化学制品

【答案解析】

本题为词义猜测题。答案 D。单从“ People often use chemicals in their gardens. ”这句话是不大容易猜测出该词的意思的。然而这个词在这个段落中接连出现了三次。第一次是说人们常在花园里使用它，第二次人们在清理房间或杀死昆虫时在屋子里使用它，第三次是说商人们还将其用于机器或在车间中使用。由此，A 项和 B 项明显是错误的。C 项具有较大的迷惑性，不过根据“ Businessmen use chemicals in their machines or shops. ”可知它是不恰当的。

样题 2

Do American children still learn handwriting in school? In the age of the keyboard, some people seem to think handwriting lessons are on the way out. 90% of teachers say they are required to teach handwriting. But studies have yet to answer the question of how well they are teaching it. One study published this year found that about three out of every four teachers say they are not prepared to teach handwriting. Some teachers are teaching handwriting by providing instruction for 10-15 minutes a day, and then other teachers who basically teach it for 60 to 70 minutes a day — which really for handwriting is pretty much.

（　）We can learn _____ from this paragraph.

A．teaching handwriting is a basic requirement in teaching job

B．most teachers prefer to teach handwriting

C．teachers spend little time in teaching handwriting

D．a keyboard has taken the place of the handwriting entirely

【答案解析】

本题为推理判断题。答案 A。根据本段中“90% of teachers say they are required to teach handwriting”可知书法教学是基本的教学要求，A 项为正确推论。根据“about three out of every four teachers say they are not prepared to teach handwriting”可知，很多老师不愿意教书法课，B 项错误；根据最后一句可知 C 项错误；根据全段判断，只是说键盘普及使一些人认为书法渐渐过时了，D 项错误。

样题 3

If you want to become a better reader, what should you know about speed of reading?

Some people read very rapidly（很快地）, while others read very slowly. But which one is better?

The rapid reader may be a good reader when he reads a storybook for fun. But he may not be able to slow down enough to read directions（说明）carefully. He may read so rapidly that he does not take time to understand fully the ideas and information which are important to remember.

The slow reader may be a good reader when he reads directions for making something. But he may spend too much time in reading a simple story which is meant to be enjoyed but is not important enough to be remembered.

So, you see, either a rapid reader or a slow reader is not really a good one. If you wish to become a better reader, here are four important things to remember about speed of reading.

1. Knowing why you are reading will often help you to know whether to read rapidly or slowly.

2. Some things should be read slowly throughout. Examples are directions for making or doing something, science and history books, and Maths problems. You must read such things slowly or remember each important step and understand each important idea.

3. Some things should be read rapidly throughout. Examples are simple stories for enjoyment, letters from friends and bits of news from hometown papers.

4. In some of your reading, you must change your speed from fast to slow and slow to fast, as you go along. You will need to read certain pages rapidly and then slow down and do more careful reading when you come to important ideas.

（　）1. What should be read rapidly?

A．Directions for making something.

B．Maths problems.

C．Science and history books.

D．Storybooks, newspapers, personal letters, etc.

（　）2. What is the important thing you should keep in mind about speed of reading?

A．To read as fast as you can.　　B．To fit your reading speed to your needs.

C．To read as slowly as possible.　　D．To keep your reading at a certain speed.

（　）3. Which title best gives the main idea of the passage?

A．Something about Careful Reading.　B．Be a Rapid Reader.

C．How to Read?　　D．How to Be a Slow Reader?

翻译：

He may read so rapidly that he does not take time to understand fully the ideas and information which are important to remember.

【答案解析】

1. 答案 D。细节事实题。根据第八段第二句 Examples are simple stories for enjoyment, letters from friends and bits of news from hometown papers. 可知“看故事书、新闻、私人信件”时可以看得快一点。

2. 答案 B。推理判断题。根据最后一段可推知“适合自己需要的阅读速度”是很重要的，故选 B。

3. 答案 C。主旨大意题。通读全文可知，本文主要说明了怎么阅读，故选 C。

4. 翻译：他可能读得太快了，没有花时间来充分理解要记住的、重要的想法和信息。

句子翻译题，句中含有两个复合句，一个是“so... that...”引导的结果状语从句，另一个是“which”引导的定语从句，翻译时注意表达顺序。

三、练习

1. 推理判断题（1～10）

强化训练 1

Earthquakes may happen anywhere on the earth. When some plates（板块）of the earth move suddenly, an earthquake happens. Many earthquakes begin under the sea. They often happen near the mountains, too.

（　）♦ The reason for an earthquake is _____.

A．that some plates on the earth move suddenly

B．that the sea is too deep

C．rocks' cracking open

D．near the mountains

强化训练 2

Several years ago, cell phones were very expensive. Only important people and people with a lot of money had them. These days, the prices have been greatly falling, and they come in small sizes and different colors. So more and more people, even high school students, have one in the hands.

It is true that it's an easy way to keep in touch with friends at any time and in any place. But in places like classrooms, movie theatres, and museums, where everyone should be quiet or talk in a low voice, we can also hear the ringing. Some drivers have accidents for using cell phones when driving. Worst of all, some students who can't pay their phone bills do something illegal to get money. So, are cell phones really a help?

(　　) ♦ How does the writer feel about cell phones?

A. They are really a help.

B. They harm people's health.

C. He wants very much to know if they do people good.

D. It's all right to use them in theatres.

强化训练 3

It was a village in India. The people were poor. However, they were not unhappy. After all, their forefathers had lived in the same way for centuries. Now, the people are still poor, but in the evenings they sit in the village square and listen to the sounds of insects and frogs.

(　　) ♦ From the paragraph we learn that the villagers _____.

A. worked very hard for centuries

B. dreamed of having a better life

C. were poor but somewhat content

D. lived a different life from their forefathers

强化训练 4

Just as crying can be healthy, not crying—holding back tears of anger, pain or suffering—can be bad for physical health. Studies have shown that too much control of emotions can lead to high blood pressure, heart problems and other illnesses. If you have a health problem, doctors will certainly not ask you to cry. But when you feel like crying, don't fight it. It's a natural—and healthy—emotional response.

(　　) ♦ According to the author, which of the following statements is true?

A. Crying is the best way to get help from others.

B. Fighting back tears may cause some health problems.

C. We will never know our deep feelings unless we cry.

D. We must cry if we want to reduce pressure.

强化训练 5

"Have you ever been out on a boat and felt it lifted up by a wave? Or have you jumped in the water and felt the rush of energy as waves came over you?" asked Jamie Taylor of the Wave Energy Group at the University of Edinburgh. "There is certainly a lot of energy in waves," he said.

Scientists are working to use that energy to make electricity. Most waves are created when winds blow across the ocean…

(　　) ♦ The writer uses the two questions at the beginning of the passage to _____.

A. test the readers' knowledge about waves

B．draw the readers' attention to the topic
C．show Jamie Taylor's importance
D．invite the readers to answer them

强化训练 6

Did you ever hear a strange sound coming from the wall? Did it sound like a clock? If so, it may have been made by a beetle（甲虫）. Long ago people thought the ticking meant that someone was about to die. Thus the beetle is called "the deathwatch beetle".

（　）♦ The sound of this beetle _____.
A．pleased people　　B．surprised people
C．frightened people　　D．excited people

强化训练 7

It is said that people should take a lesson from the clock. The clock passes the time by keeping its hands busy. People who do what the clock does also pass the time by keeping their hands busy and not by sleeping the time away.

（　）♦ From the text you can tell that busy people _____.
A．act like clocks　　B．sleep the time away
C．don't do what clocks do　　D．don't have hands

强化训练 8

It is fun to turn over a big rock on the beach. Make sure you turn the rock back to the position it was in after you moved it. If you don't turn it back over, all the sea animals under it or clinging to（依附）the underside will die.

（　）♦ You can tell that rocks _____.
A．hurt sea animals　　B．protect sea animals
C．won't be found on beaches　　D．can't be found on beaches

强化训练 9

One day a man walked into a pet shop and said to the shop assistant, "I need two small mice and about five dozen roaches（蟑螂）and two spiders（蜘蛛）." "What do you need these things for?" the shop assistant was very surprised. "Well, " replied the man, "I'm moving out of my apartment and the landlord insists that I should leave the house in exactly the same condition as I found it."

（　）♦ The passage suggests that when the writer moved into the apartment, it was _____.
A．very clean　　B．just cleaned by the landlord
C．tidy and comfortable　　D．dirty and full of insects

强化训练 10

Then the people realized what was happening. It was the frog. They hadn't been useless. They had been doing an important job—eating insects. Now with so many frogs killed, the insects were increasing more rapidly. They were damaging the crops and spreading diseases. Now, the people are still poor. But in the evenings they sit in the village square and listen to sounds of

insects and frogs. These sounds of the night now have a much deeper meaning.

（　）♦ What can we infer from the last sentence of the text?

A．Happiness comes from peaceful life in the country.

B．Health is more important than money.

C．The harmony between man and nature is important .

D．Good old days will never be forgotten.

2. 细节事实题（11～18）

强化训练 11

Dear Mr. Brown,

I saw your advertisement in the local paper this evening, and I wonder if you would consider me for a job as a waiter this summer.

I am seventeen years old and at present I am studying for my "A" levels in English and economics. When I leave school, I will hope to take a course in hotel management. During the school holidays last summer, I worked as a waiter at the Central Hotel. The head waiter there, Mr. White, will be pleased to send you a recommendation for me.

I would prefer to work in your hotel in Filey because it is near my home. However, if there isn't any job there for me, perhaps you could consider me for the Scarborough Hotel.

I would be pleased if you will send me information about the pay and conditions of the job to be offered. I will be free to begin work in the fourth week of July when the school holidays start.

Yours sincerely,

Peter Tuck

（　）1. Peter wrote this letter in order to _____.

A．ask about a nearby hotel　　B．get in a summer course

C．apply for a summer job　　D．introduce himself as a waiter

（　）2. How many hotels are mentioned in this letter?

A．Two.　　B．Three.　　C．Four.　　D．Five.

（　）3. If Peter is accepted, when will he be able to start?

A．On May 22.　　B．In late July.

C．In four weeks.　　D．On July 4.

强化训练 12

Not long ago, my wife, PJ, and I tried a new diet—not to lose a little weight but to answer an annoying question about climate change.

（　）♦ Why did the author and his wife try a new diet?

A．To take special kinds of food.　　B．To respond to climate change.

C．To lose weight.　　D．To improve their health.

强化训练 13

In 1988, Tanni went to her first Paralympic Games（残奥会）in Seoul. She won bronze（铜

牌）in the 400 metres. Even greater success followed at the 1992 Barcelona Paralympics. Tanni won gold in the 100, 200, 400, and 800 metres' relay, setting two world records in the process.

（　）♦ When did Tanni win her first Olympic gold medal?

A．In 1984.　　B．In 1988.　　C．In 1992.　　D．In 2008.

强化训练 14

（New York）A French tourist highly praised for rescuing a two-year-old girl in Manhattan said he didn't think twice before diving into the freezing East River.

Tuesday's Daily News said 29-year-old Julien Duret from France is the man who left the spot quickly after the rescue last Sunday.

He lifted the little girl out of water after she fell off the bank at the South Street Seaport Museum. He handed the girl to her father, David Anderson, who had dived in after him.

（　）♦ Who dived after Duret into the river to save the little girl?

A．David Anderson.　　B．A passer-by.

C．His girlfriend.　　D．A taxi driver.

强化训练 15

Food sometimes gets poisoned with harmful things. A person who eats such food can get an illness called food poisoning. Food poisoning is usually not serious, but some types are deadly. The symptoms of food poisoning usually begin within hours of eating the poisoned food. Fever is one of the most common symptoms.

（　）♦ Which of the following statements is NOT true?

A．Food when poisoned can make people sick.

B．Food poisoning means death.

C．Food poisoning comes in varieties（种类）.

D．Food poisoning can be serious.

强化训练 16

What do you think of your teachers? Now, American students can say what they think on a new website!

On www.ratemyteachers.com, students can rate（评定）their teachers. So far, there have been 2 million ratings for 365,000 teachers at 21,000 schools in the US and Canada.

（　）♦ Where can the students rate their teachers according to the passage？

A．On a new website.　　B．At the class meeting.

C．In the classroom.　　D．Out of the school.

强化训练 17

Years ago, many zoos kept all kinds of animals in small cages. Small cages made it easy for people to see the animals，but a small cage is not a good place for an animal to live in. Today zoos keep animals in different kinds of cages. The cages are very big and open. They usually have plants and a little lake.

（　）♦1. Zoos kept animals in small cages so that people can _____.

A．protect them　　B．see them better
C．feed them　　D．save them

（　）♦2. Today, zoos keep animals _____.
A．in bigger cages　　B．in the wild
C．in smaller cages　　D．in the field

强化训练 18

Then, about six months after Gertie arrived, I felt something in my heart was taking place, and I was unable to stop it. My behavior began to change. I began to smile at people when passing them in a street. I returned waves from neighbors. I started calling my kids and, to my surprise, they started calling me. I even tried to speak to my grandchildren over the phone once. I even was glad to listen to laughter from a 10-month-old granddaughter. The point is that I was changing.

（　）♦ When did the man's behavior begin to change?
A．About two years ago.
B．When Gertie was nearly two years old.
C．When Gertie was 15 weeks old.
D．About six months after Gertie arrived.

3．词义猜测题（19～30）

强化训练 19

It will be very hard but also very brittle—that is, it will break easily.

（　）♦ The underlined word "brittle" in this sentence means_____.
A．easily broken　　B．soft inside
C．very hard　　D．expensive

强化训练 20

The herdsman, who looks after sheep, earns about 650 yuan a year.

（　）♦ The underlined word "herdsman" in this sentence means_____.
A．a keeper of a group of animals, esp, cattle
B．a butcher
C．a man who sells sheep
D．a person who looks after and kill animals

强化训练 21

Those new comers were not used to the life in the outskirts which was so different from that inside the city.

（　）♦ The underlined word "outskirts" means _____.
A．town　　B．capital　　C．countryside　　D．house

强化训练 22

Children are always boasting. They say things like "My dad's car is bigger than your

Dad's." "My mom is smarter than yours." and "My family has more money than yours."

（　）♦ The word "boasting" means _____.

A．骄傲　　B．吹牛　　C．顽皮　　D．幼稚

强化训练 23

We can not feel speed. But our sense let us know that we are moving. We see things moving past and feel that we are being shaken.

We can feel acceleration, an increase in speed. But we notice it for only a short time. For example, we feel it during the takeoff run of an airplane.

（　）♦ The underlined word "acceleration" in this paragraph means _____.

A．any kind of movement　　B．the movement of a plane

C．a steady speed　　D．an increase in speed

强化训练 24

The whole family had experienced such a storm before and everyone remembered the damage it had caused to stock and crops. There was very little we could do about the crops. But we needed to protect the animals in case the river flooded again.

（　）♦ The underlined word "stock" refers to _____.

A．money owned by the family　　B．goods for sale

C．supplies for family use　　D．farm animals

强化训练 25

Michael and Derek are good friends, but they like to pull each other's leg sometimes. One day during the holidays they decided to go to London together. They went to the station and bought their tickets. When the train came in, Michael boarded it first and, without knowing it, dropped his ticket on the platform as he got in to the carriage. Derek, who was close behind, saw the ticket fall and quickly picked it up. Without a word to his friend, he put it in his pocket.

After they had been in the train a little while, they heard the ticket inspector coming down the corridor, shouting "Ticket, please!" Michael looked for his and of course couldn't find it.

"Oh dear, I can't find my ticket, Derek. " he said.

"Have another look, Michael; it must be somewhere," said Derek. "No, I can't find it anywhere. Whatever shall I do? "

"Perhaps you had better hide under the seat; then the inspector won't know you are here. "

So Michael crawled under the seat as far as he could and lay perfectly still. Presently the door opened, and in came the inspector. "Tickets, please." he said.

Derek handed him two tickets, and said, "This is mine. The other belongs to my friend, who prefers to travel under the seat. "

（　）♦ In the first paragraph, "they like to pull each other's leg" means _____.

A．they like to help each other　　B．they like to pull each other by the leg

C．they like to kick each other　　D．they like to play jokes on each other

强化训练 26

“ Well, we’re in our new house. Let’s get a new pet to get along with it,” Mrs. Brown said to her husb. and.

“That sounds like a pretty good idea, ” he answered. “Do you want to see the ads in the newspaper? ”

“Let’s go to the animal shelter. Many pets there need homes. Since tomorrow is Saturday, we can both go,” she said.

Next morning the Browns met Mr. Snow at the animal shelter. “We want to be sure that the pets here go to good homes,” Mr. Snow said, “So I need to ask you some questions.”

（ ）♦ The word “shelter” in the reading means _____.

A．a place to sell small dogs　　B．a place to keep homeless animals

C．a place to study animals　　D．a place to sell books on pet care

强化训练 27

As in many areas, old habits die hard and the places continues to be called by its unofficial name long before the meaning is lost.

（ ）♦ What does the underlined part “die hard” probably mean?

A．change suddenly　　B．change significantly（显著地）

C．disappear mysteriously（神秘地）　D．disappear very slowly

强化训练 28

After a four-year relationship with a major fortune 100 company beginning as a sales trainee and ending as a regional sales manager, I left the company at the height of my career. Many people were astounded that I would leave after earning a six-figure income. And they asked why I would risk everything for a dream.

（ ）♦ The underlined word “astounded” means _____.

A．very sad　　B．very sorry

C．very pleased　　D．greatly surprised

强化训练 29

We know the mosquito very well. Mosquitoes fly everywhere. They can be found almost all over the world, and there are more than 2,500 kinds of them.

No one likes the mosquito. But the mosquito may decide that she loves you. She? Yes, she. It’s true that male mosquito doesn’t bite and only the female mosquito bites because she needs blood to lay eggs. She is always looking for things or people she wants to bite. If she likes what she finds, she bites. But if she doesn’t like your blood, she will turn to someone else for more delicious blood. Next time a mosquito bites you, just remember you are chosen. You’re different from the others!

（ ）“Mosquito” means _____ in Chinese.

A．苍蝇　　B．蜻蜓　　C．跳蚤　　D．蚊子

强化训练 30

A tornado can do a lot of damage. The wind of a tornado rushes at great speed around a funnel-shaped cloud. It travels in a path a few hundred feet wide and about twenty-five miles long. As the wind circles, the funnel（漏斗）spirals（盘旋）higher and higher.

（　）♦ The underlined word "tornado" in this paragraph means_____.

A．rainstorm　　B．dust storm

C．great circle wind　　D．huge funnel of water

4. 主旨大意题（31～40）

强化训练 31

Smoking cigarettes is harmful to your health. Experiments show that cigarette smoking can cause cancer. Besides the most serious and terrible disease, cancer, cigarette smoking also can cause other health problems. For example, it can give one a "smoker's cough". Finally, studies have shown it is easy for cigarette smokers to catch colds.

Whether you get an unimportant cold or terrible killer, cancer, smoking is harmful. Is it worth it?

（　）♦ What is the main idea of the passage?

A．Cigarette smoking can cause cancer.

B．Smoking can cause the most serious and terrible disease.

C．Smoking also can cause other health problems.

D．Smoking is harmful.

强化训练 32

If you were planning to buy a television set, the following advertisement would certainly draw your attention: "Color TV. Only $79. Two days sale. Hurry." However, when you go to the store to buy, you may discover that they are sold out. But the shop assistant is quick to tell you that he has another model. A much better set which is "just right for you." It costs $395. This sales method is called "bait and switch（诱骗销售法）". Buyers are baited with a sales advertisement, and then they are switched to another more expensive one. Buying things on sale needs careful consideration of the goods and the reason for the sale.

（　）♦ The paragraph could be entitled _____.

A．Buyer Beware（当心）　　B．A Selling Method

C．TV On Sales　　D．Buying A TV Set

强化训练 33

Tom studied four years at the University of Paris and decided to leave before his graduation. He transferred to the University of Berlin and graduated with honors. Harvard Law School and, later, Boston College provided him with an excellent legal background. He is presently a corporation lawyer in Miami, Florida.

（　）♦ The main idea of this paragraph is that _____.

A．Tom, who had studied at Paris Universities for four years, moved to another university.

B．Tom became a lawyer since his graduation from Harvard Law School and later from Boston College.

C．Tom was an excellent student when he studied at Berlin University.

D．Tom received an excellent education.

强化训练 34

In modern society there is a great deal of argument about competition. Some value it highly, believing that it is responsible for social progress and prosperity（繁荣）. Others say that competition is bad; that it sets one person against another; that it leads to unfriendly relationship between people.

（　）♦ What does this passage mainly talk about?

A．Competition helps to set up self-respect.

B．Opinions about competition are different among people.

C．Competition is harmful to personal quality development.

D．Failures are necessary experience in competition.

强化训练 35

JINTAN, JIANGSU: The 20 students — 18 boys and 2 girls — had a thousand reasons to be proud of themselves. They had just climbed their way to the top rung（阶梯）out of 4 million students taking part in the Fifth National Hua Luogeng Gold Cup Mathematics Contest on Tuesday evening.

The 20 gold medal winners are all primary and middle school students under the age of 14.

“Many of the problems are of college level and these pupils can figure them out. It is just unbelievable!” said a teacher from Guangdong Province.

Named after China’s most famous mathematician, Hua Luogeng, the contest started in 1986, one year after his death. In less than 10 years, it has been recognized by the State Education Commission（国家教委）as the country’s biggest and best contest of its kind.

（　）♦ This news story is mainly about _____.

A．when the contest started

B．how the contest got its name

C．the 20 pupils who have won gold medals in the contest

D．the 5th National Hua Luogeng Gold Cup Mathematics Contest

强化训练 36

Often no one looks guiltier（有罪的）than the innocent（无辜的）. On the other hand, nobody may look more innocent than a professional criminal. And the man who knows “everything” may really only be trying to hide his own weakness. So, it is foolish to try to judge a person only by his appearance.

（　）♦ What does this passage mainly talk about?

A．No one looks guiltier than the innocent.

B．No one looks more innocent than a professional criminal.

C．The man who knows “everything” may really only be trying to hide his own weakness.

D．It is foolish to try to judge a person only by his appearance.

强化训练 37

When students and parents are asked to rate subjects according to their importance, the arts are unavoidably at the bottom of the list. Music is nice, people seem to say, but not important. Too often it is viewed as mere（仅仅的）entertainment, but certainly not an education priority（优先）. This view is shortsighted. In fact, music education is beneficial and important for all students.

……

So music education is far more necessary than people seem to realize.

（　）♦ What is the main idea of the passage?

A．Music education deserves more attention.

B．Music should be of top education priority.

C．Music is an effective communication tool.

D．Music education makes students more imaginative.

强化训练 38

It’s not easy being a teenager — nor is it easy being the parent of a teenager. You can make your child feel angry, hurt, or misunderstood by what you say without realizing it yourself. It is important to give your child the space he needs to grow while gently letting him know that you’ll still be there for him when he needs you.

Expect a lot from your child, just not everything. Except for health and safety problems, such as drug use or careless driving, consider everything else open to discussion. ……

Teach your teenager that the family phone is for the whole family. If your child talks on the family’s telephone for too long, tell him he can talk for 15 minutes. ……

（　）♦ The main purpose of the text is to tell parents _____.

A．how to get along with a teenager

B．how to respect a teenager

C．how to understand a teenager

D．how to help a teenager grow up

强化训练 39

I suddenly heard an elephant crying as though frightened. Looking down, I immediately recognized that something was wrong, and ran down to the edge of the near bank. There I saw Ma Shwe with her three-month-old calf（幼崽）struggling in the fast-rising water, and it was a life-and-death struggle. Her calf was floating and screaming with fear.

……

While I was wondering what I could do next, I heard the sound of a mother’s love. Ma Shwe had crossed the river and got up the bank and was making her way back as fast as she could, roaring（吼叫）all the time, but to her calf it was music.

（　）♦ What can be the best title for the text?

A．A Mother's Love　　B．A Brave Act
C．A Deadly River　　D．A Matter of Life and Death

强化训练 40

Fat on human beings is distributed（分布）in different ways. Some fat people have a large stomach and no waistline — which makes them look round, rather like apples. Others are fatter below the waist, which makes them appear pear-shaped.

There are two types of fat: external（外部的）fat（fat under the skin）and internal fat（fat inside the body wall）. Doctors, who have been examining the relationship between health and fatness, have found that the 'pears' have less internal fat, but the 'apples' have more internal fat than external fat. This seems to be what causes the health problems.

The best treatment for fatness is to reduce the internal fat. But unfortunately it seems that dieting（节食）simply makes an apple-shaped person into a smaller apple and a pear-shaped person into a smaller pear. At the moment there is no known way of reducing the internal rather than external fat.

（　）♦ The text is mainly about _____.

A．fatness and health　　B．ways to lose weigh
C．people's figures　　D．distribution of fat

5．句子翻译题（41～42）

强化训练 41

Maybe you are an average student. You probably think you will never be a top student. This is not necessarily so, however. Anyone can become a better student if he or she wants to. Here is how.

Plan your time carefully.

（1）When planning your week, you should make a list of things that you have to do. After making the list, you should make a schedule of your time. First arrange your time for eating, sleeping, dressing, etc. Then decide a good, regular time for studying. Don't forget to set aside enough time for entertainment.（2）A weekly schedule may not solve all the problems, but it will force you to realize what is happening to your time.

Find a good place to study.

Look around the house for a good study area.（3）Keep this place, which may be a desk or simply a corner of your room, free of everything but study materials. No games, radios or TV！When you sit down to study, concentrate on the subject.

Make good use of your time in class.

Take advantage of class time to listen to everything the teacher says. Really listening in class means less work later.（4）Taking class notes will help you remember what the teacher says.

Study regularly.

When you get home from schools, go over your notes. Review the important points that your teacher has mentioned in class. If you know what your teacher is going to discuss the next

day, read the material. This will help you understand the next class. If you do these things regularly, the material will become more meaningful, and you will remember it longer.

Develop a good attitude about the tests.

The purpose of a test is to show what you have learned about a subject. They help you to remember your new knowledge. (5) The world won't end if you don't pass a test, so don't be overly worried. There are other methods that might help you with your studying. You will probably discover many others after you have tried these.

(1) When planning your week, you should make a list of things that you have to do.

(2) A weekly schedule may not solve all the problems, but it will force you to realize what is happening to your time.

(3) Keep this place, which may be a desk or simply a corner of your room, free of everything but study materials.

(4) Taking class notes will help you remember what the teacher says.

(5) The world won't end if you don't pass a test, so don't be overly worried.

强化训练 42

Books are our best friends. They give us both knowledge and pleasure. With books, our life is interesting. (1) Books are such great friends of ours that we can turn to them for help whenever we meet with difficulty.

However, we should make use of books. As there are books of different kinds, we should read them in different ways. (2) In my opinion, some books are to be read carefully and we must think over and learn something from them. Some should be just looked through. There are a few books that we should never read, for they are not good for us. (3) The most important thing is that we must try to put what we learn from books to practice.

(1) Books are such great friends of ours that we can turn to them for help whenever we meet with difficulty.

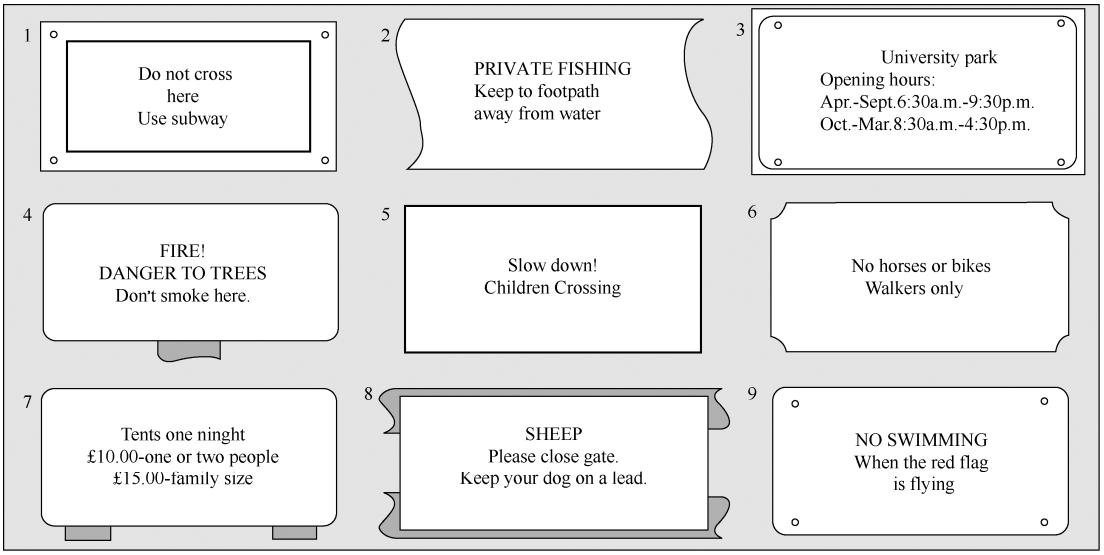
(2) In my opinion, some books are to be read carefully and we must think over and learn something from them.

(3) The most important thing is that we must try to put what we learn from books to practice.

6. 综合训练

强化训练 43

What does the sign say?



（　）1. What time does the University park open in March?

A．At 6:00 a.m. B．At 6:30 a.m. C．At 8:00 a.m. D．At 8:30 a.m.

（　）2. Which sign tells you not to smoke?

A．Sign 2. B．Sign 4. C．Sign 6. D．Sign 8.

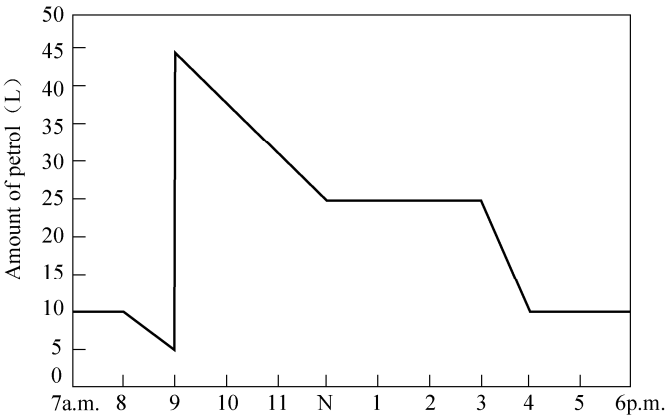
（　）3. Where can you see Sign 9?

A．On the playground. B．At the school library.

C．Near the swimming pool. D．In the computer room.

强化训练 44

This is a chart of a car's fuel consumption（燃料消耗）during a certain day.（生词：petrol 汽油，litre 升）



（　）1.The above chart shows _____.

A．how much petrol was needed to fill the tank

B．the speed the car was going

C．which trip used the most petrol

D．how far the car travelled

（　）2. The driver bought petrol at _____.

A．8 a.m.　　B．9 a.m.　　C．4 p.m.　　D．6 p.m.

（　）3. Throughout the day the car used _____.

A．45 litres of petrol　　B．40 litres of petrol

C．35 litres of petrol　　D．10 litres of petrol

强化训练 45

Saturday Kids' Club

Kids' Club starts at 10:30a.m. , with creative activities, followed by the film at 11:00a.m. , for 3-13 year olds.

There will be no Kids' Club on 5 and 12 July.

Saturday 21 June	Saturday 28 June	Saturday 19 June	Saturday 26 June
MEET THE ROBINSONS	TREASURE PLANET	TWO BROTHERS	MR BEAN'S HOLIDAY
102mins	95mins	104mins	89mins

NOTE TO PARENTS: Parents may leave children over eight alone in the cinema, but should know that the cinema is not providing any official child care. We do, however, provide as safe an environment as possible for younger children. People over 18 are not allowed to the cinema unless they are going with a child. If you leave your children in the cinema, please be there on time to collect them at the end of the film.

（　）1. The above is _____.

A．a poster from a club　　B．an advertisement for films

C．a note to parents　　D．an introduction of a cinema

（　）2. A mother will sure meet her kid at 12:30 after the film in the club. It must be _____.

A．21 June　　B．28 June　　C．19 July　　D．26 July

（　）3. Which of the following is allowed to the cinema alone in the club?

A．A 2-year-old baby.　　B．A 19-year-old student

C．A 30-year-old parent.　　D．A 10-year-old pupil.

（　）4. _____ on the first Saturday of July.

A．Kids' Club will start at 10:30

B．The kids will see TWO BROTHERS

C．There will be no Kids' Club

D．The kids will have creative activities

（　）5. The longest film of the four is _____.

A．MEET THE ROBINSONS　　B．TWO BROTHERS

C．TREASURE PLANET　　D．MR BEAN'S HOLIDAY

强化训练 46

Hip-hop dancing（街舞）is popular with many young people today. They like it because they can invent their own moves. They use this dance to show their love for life. It also shows that they feel good about life, that they just want to be themselves and enjoy life, and that they are not afraid of problems.

Hip-hop dancing has a history of more than 20 years. It first began in the 1980s in the US. In early times, it was seen in New York and Los Angles. At that time, many young black people often danced to the music in the streets. They used their legs, arms, heads and even shoulders to dance. Many young people still use most of these moves today.

Hip-hop dancing became popular all over the world because of the 1983 movie *Flash dance*. Some people performed Hip-hop dancing in the movie. People enjoyed their performance. They began to dance like them. Then it became popular. There are two kinds of Hip-hop dancing: new school and old school. More and more young people are learning Hip-hop dancing. People believe that it is a good way to exercise their bodies, and that it is good for their health.

（　）1. Young people like Hip-hop dancing because _____.

A．it has a history of more than 20 years

B．it first began in the US

C．they can invent their own moves

D．many young black people often dance it

（　）2. At first Hip-hop dancing was seen _____.

A．in the movies　　B．in the streets

C．in the old schools　　D．in the new schools

（　）3. The young black people used their _____ to dance at that time.

A．legs　　B．heads　　C．arms and shoulders　　D．A, B and C

（　）4. Hip-hop dancing became popular all over the world _____.

A．in the 1980s　　B．in 1983

C．20 years ago　　D．in early times

（　）5. Which of the following is TRUE about Hip-hop dancing?

A．It's not a good way to exercise.

B．It shows that young people feel bad about life.

C．Young people use this dance to show their love for life.

D．It shows that young people are afraid of problems.

6. At that time, many young black people often danced to the music in the streets.

强化训练 47

Tibet（西藏）is among the most popular places for Chinese tourists. The number of travelers to Tibet has grown by 10% every year for a few years. Since July 1, 2006, when the first train ran 1956 kilometers from Xining to Lhasa, more and more people have been going to Tibet.

The train stops at several famous places along the way, such as Qinghai Lake, Kunlun Mountain, and the Potala Palace. Passengers can also enjoy many activities during the journey, like Tibetan dancing and Karaoke.

On the train, passengers can have tea, eggs and noodles for breakfast, and fried chicken and green vegetables for lunch and dinner. Unlike most Chinese trains which have open-hole toilets, this one has special toilets which can collect the waste. There is also a special rubbish system in the train that keeps the environment clean. All the windows on the train can protect people from the bright sunlight. TV and electrical sockets for computers and mobile phones can be found on the train.

Because there isn't much oxygen there, trains will have oxygen masks for those who need them. It makes passengers feel more comfortable when they have enough oxygen on the famous "roof of the world". There are also doctors on the train to make sure that all of the travelers are safe.

（　）1. Which of the following is not among the places of interest?

A．Qinghai Lake.　　B．Karaoke.

C．Kunlun Mountain.　　D．The Potala Palace.

（　）2. The train is unlike most Chinese trains except its _____.

A．windows　B．toilets　C．sockets　D．rubbish

（　）3. The underlined word "them" in the last paragraph refers to _____.

A．oxygen masks　　B．doctors

C．oxygen　　D．passengers

（　）4. We can learn from the passage that _____.

A．flying to Tibet is impossible

B．train to Lhasa is too clean to take

C．train trip to Tibet is popular with travelers

D．taking train to Lhasa causes a lot of trouble

（　）5. What's the best title of the passage?

A．Tibet — roof of the world　　B．Magic train to magic Tibet

C．Beautiful views in Tibet　　D．A comfortable trip to Tibet

（　）6. What's the meaning of the underlined word "sockets" in the passage?

A．织袜机　B．插座　C．柜子　D．袜子

7. Unlike most Chinese trains which have open-hole toilets, this one has special toilets which can collect the waste.

强化训练 48

There was heavy snow and windy weather in Chicago on Monday, and there was also heavy rain on the west coast of the United States — especially in and around the city of San Francisco.

Things were no better on the other side of the world in Australia — there was quite heavy rain in the state of Queensland, with 475mm of rain falling in just five days.

In south-west Europe, there was more hot, sunny weather with the town of Jerez de la Frontera in the South of Spain the hottest place. The temperature was 30 degrees, the warmest so far this year.

It wasn't all good news in Europe, however. There was heavy snow in the Balkans, and parts of north-eastern Italy on Monday and Tuesday. Things are getting a little better in the city of Irkutsk, in eastern Siberia, however; the temperature went above zero degrees for the first time since last November.

（　）1. It is reported that most of the states and cities had bad weather except _____.

A. the south of Spain　　B. the north-east of Italy

C. San Francisco　　D. the parts of Australia

（　）2. Why does the report say that it wasn't all good news in Europe?

A. The temperature was low in Irkutsk.

B. It snowed heavily in the Balkans.

C. There was heavy rain in parts of Italy.

D. It was quite cold in eastern Siberia.

（　）3.Which of the following places probably had the biggest amount of rain?

A. San Francisco.　　B. Queensland.

C. Chicago.　　D. Jerez de la Frontera.

（　）4. What do you think the reading above is?

A. Geography in the world.　　B. The world environment.

C. The weather in Europe.　　D. The world weather report.

5. Things were no better on the other side of the world in Australia — there was quite heavy rain in the state of Queensland, with 475mm of rain falling in just five days.

强化训练 49

It is said that all dreams serve a purpose. While there is no agreement among scientists about why we dream, there are many ideas about the different kinds of dreams we have.

One common kind of dream is the repeating dream, in which the same story is repeated again and again, often for many months or even years. Some believe these are a sign people have a problem in their life and once that problem is gone then the dream will stop. Others think they are a way to help people remember something very important.

Another well-known kind of dream is the nightmare. The pictures and stories in such dreams make people very afraid and dreamers usually remember them far more clearly than normal

dreams. The cause of such dreams may be seeing something terrifying such as a car accident or some deadly snakes. Others think such dreams may be trying to make a person pay attention to something that is dangerous in their life.

Daydreams happen during wake-time when we forget where we are or what we are doing and find ourselves in a made-up story or unreal world. We often daydream when we are doing something that is not interesting or exciting. They help us think about our future.

Lucid（神志清醒的）dreams are the most fun. These happen when dreamers suddenly understand that they are dreaming. Instead of waking up, they stay in the dream and are able to control what happens in the dream as if they are making a movie.

（　）1. The underlined word "they"（in paragraph 2）refers to "_____".

A. dreams　　B. problems　　C. dreamers　　D. scientists

（　）2. The underlined word "terrifying"（in paragraph 3）is closest in meaning to "_____".

A. frightening　　B. interesting

C. disappointing　　D. amazing

（　）3. When might a person daydream?

A. During a very interesting movie.

B. While playing at a fun park.

C. While listening to an uninteresting talk.

D. When making a movie.

（　）4. How do we know if we are lucidly dreaming?

A. We can remember the dream very clearly.

B. We can control what happens in the dream.

C. We think that the dream is like a movie.

D. We feel very nervous after we wake up.

（　）5. What is the best title of the passage?

A. Daydreaming of You　　B. Enjoy Your Dream

C. What Dreams Mean　　D. Where Dreams Go

6. Instead of waking up, they stay in the dream and are able to control what happens in the dream as if they are making a movie.

强化训练 50

People often said Thomas Edison was the greatest genius of his age. There are only a few men in all of history, who have changed the lives of other men as much as the inventor of the first useful electric light. But Edison could never be pleased only because someone said he was a genius. "There is no such thing as genius." Edison said. He thought what people called genius was mostly hard work.

But Edison was a dreamer as well as a worker. From his earliest days as a child he wondered

about the secrets of nature. He tried to understand them, and then he tried to learn what he could usefully do with them.

Edison enjoyed thinking. He knew that most people would do almost anything instead of the difficult work of thinking, especially if they do not think very often. But he knew, too, that thinking could give men enjoyment and pleasure.

Edison could not understand how anyone could not be interested in life. As he loved to think, he also loved to work. On the day he became 75 years old, someone asked him what idea he had about life. "Work," he answered, "Discovering the secrets of nature and using them to make men happier." He said he had enough inventions in his mind to give him another 100 years of work.

() 1. According to Thomas Edison, what's genius?

A. Hard thinking. B. Hard work.

C. Useful dreams. D. Useful inventions.

() 2. After exploring the secrets of nature, Edison always tried to _____.

A. write down what he had learnt B. carry out a new experiment

C. make them useful in life D. share them with others

() 3. Edison could not understand _____.

A. how anybody enjoyed life B. how anybody loved working

C. why anybody loved thinking D. why anybody was tired of life

() 4. The last sentence in the passage means that _____.

A. Edison was born to be a great inventor

B. Edison was able to live another 100 years

C. Edison was ready to make his 100th invention

D. life was too short for Edison to work for human beings

5. He said he had enough inventions in his mind to give him another 100 years of work.

强化训练 51

When I was 16 years old a boy gave me an important gift. It was a smile.

It was the early autumn of my first year at a junior high school, and my old school was far away. As a result, no one knew who I was. I was very lonely, and afraid to make friends with anyone.

Every time I heard the other students talking and laughing, I felt my heart broken. I couldn't talk about anyone with my problems. And I didn't want my parents to worry about me.

Then one day, my classmates talked happily with their friends, but I sat at my desk unhappily as usual. At that moment, a boy entered the classroom. I didn't know who he was. He passed me and then turned back. He looked at me, without a word, but with a smile.

Suddenly, I felt the touch of something bright and friendly. It made me feel happy, lively and warm.

That smile changed my life. I started to talk with other students and made friends. Day by day, I became closer to everyone in my class. The boy with the lucky smile has become my best

friend now.

One day I asked him why he smiled, but he couldn't remember smiling at me!

It doesn't matter because all the dark days have gone. I believe that the world is what you think it is. If you think it lonely, you might always be alone. So smile at the world and it will smile back.

（　）1. Why was the smile an important gift?

A. Because the writer's old school was far away.

B. Because the writer didn't know who the boy was.

C. Because the smile didn't mean anything to the boy.

D. Because it made the writer feel happy, lively and warm.

（　）2. The writer didn't talk to anyone in her new school about her problem because _____.

A. she was always unhappy

B. she didn't have any friends there

C. she was in the first year at the junior high school

D. she didn't want her parents to worry about her

（　）3. How did the smile change her life?

A. She started to make friends.

B. She became the best friend with the boy.

C. Her parents didn't worry about her any more.

D. She realized that she was lonely.

（　）4. Where does she now think her feeling of unhappiness came from?

A. From her old school.　　B. From her parents.

C. From herself.　　D. From her classmate at the new school.

5. So smile at the world and it will smile back.

强化训练 52

Bill was fourteen years old and in the ninth grade. He had a part-time job which got him up at five o'clock. He was a newspaper boy.

Each morning, Bill left the house at five fifteen to go to the center. The newspapers were delivered there by a truck at midnight. He carried them on his bike.

In winter it was still dark when he got up. But during the rest of the year it was bright. Bill had to deliver the newspapers to his customers' houses in all kinds of weather. He tried to put each paper in the box where it was safe from wind, rain and snow. His customers thought he did a good job. Sometimes they gave him tips.

Bill made about $70 each month and he was saving some of the money to go to college. He spent the rest on tapes and clothes. Once a month he had to collect money from his customers. Since many of them worked during the day, Bill had to get the money at night. Sometimes when

Bill was ill, his elder brother had to deliver the newspapers. Once his father had to help him.

Bill has 70 customers now, but he hopes to get more soon. Some day, when he has many more customers, perhaps Bill will win a prize for being a very good newspaper boy. He wants to win a visit to Europe, but he would be happy enough if he won a new bike.

（ ）1. Bill did a part-time job as _____.

A．a waiter　B．a driver　C．a newspaper boy　D．a salesman

（ ）2. In the passage, the underlined word “delivered” means _____.

A．收集　B．印制　C．分发　D．制造

（ ）3. How often did Bill have to collect money from his customers?

A．Once a month.　B．Once a week.

C．Once a year.　D．Once a day.

（ ）4. From the story we know the customers like _____ people.

A．clever　B．hard-working　C．young　D．poor

（ ）5. According to the passage, if Bill worked really hard, he could possibly win ____.

A．more friends　B．more money

C．more newspaper　D．a visit to Europe or a new bike

6. He tried to put each paper in the box where it was safe from wind, rain and snow.

强化训练 53

When I was seven years old, my family made me an ant farm. First, we put clean sand in a thin glass box. Then we waited for the ants to arrive.

After the ants were in the glass farm, they started to make tunnels（地道）. I was amazed that each one knew exactly what to do. Each had its own job.

On the fifth day a tragedy（悲剧）happened. I put my face so close to the glass farm that I knocked it over. All the tunnels fell down. Although the ants remained alive after their earthquake, one by one they began to die. I was scared as I watched them give up building their tunnels to carry the bodies to a comer of the farm.

My mother said that the ants were dying of sadness. They simply could not stand that their tunnels were gone.

Although much time has passed, I still think of that ant farm. Mom had hoped it would teach me about the natural world, but it taught me much more.

Over the years, I came to realize the importance of teamwork. Working together, the ants were able to make an amazing world for themselves. I also learned adversity（逆境）is a natural part of life, and must be accepted. Unlike the ants, we build another.

Giving up, I say, is not a good choice.

（ ）1. What did the writer’s family do for him when he was seven?

A．They built a farm of ants.　B．They bought a few ants.

C．They caught a lot of ants.　D．They found an ant city.

（　）2. Which statement is TRUE according to the passage?

A．The writer broke the glass box because it made his face dirty.

B．The ants died one by one because the tunnels were destroyed.

C．Unlike people, teamwork is not so important for the ants.

D．Giving up is a good way when we meet trouble.

（　）3. Which is the correct order of the following?

a. All the tunnels fell down.　　b. The ants died one by one.

c. The ants got into the glass box.　　d. The ants began making tunnels.

A．a— b— c— d　　B．a— c— d— b

C．c— d— a— b　　D．c— a— d— b

（　）4. What did the writer come to realize a few years later?

A．Working together is useless.　　B．Teamwork is important.

C．He can't accept adversity.　　D．Working alone is amazing.

（　）5. What is the best title for the passage?

A．Ants Fear Adversity　　B．My Family and Ants

C．Giving Up in Adversity　　D．A Good Lesson from Ants

6. Working together, the ants were able to make an amazing world for themselves.

强化训练 54

The human body is a living machine, and, like all machines, it needs "fuel"（燃料）to supply it with energy. This is provided by the food we eat. But how much do we need to stay healthy?

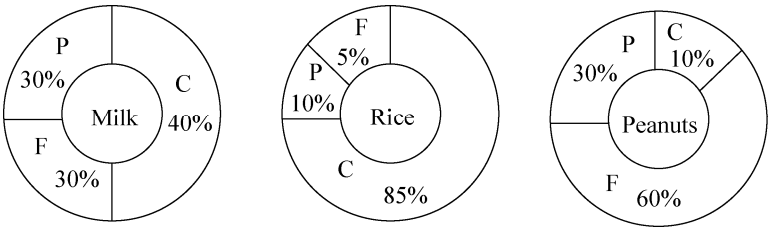
The energy value of food is usually measured in calories. A calorie is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 kg of water by 1℃. The number of calories people need per day is different, as the chart below shows.

CALORIES NEEDED PER DAY			
Baby	750	Office worker	2,700
Child aged 8	2,100	Woman feeding baby	2,700
Man over 70	2,100	Boy aged 16	3,000
Woman	3,600	Farmer	2,600

Also, the number of calories you use at any one moment normally depends on the activity you are in. For example, you need more calories for standing than for sitting, more for running than for walking, and so on.

The energy in food is in the form of three kinds of chemical materials — carbohydrate（碳水化合物）, protein（蛋白质）and fat. Carbohydrate provides 3.8 Cal/gm of the energy, protein 4.0 Cal/gm, and fat 8.8 Cal/gm. Each food contains different amounts of these materials, as the round pictures show.

（P = protein；C = carbohydrate；F = fat）



（　）1. The number of calories supplied by equal amounts of milk, rice, and peanuts is the largest in the case of _____.

A．milk　　B．rice

C．peanuts　　D．rice or peanuts

（　）2. How many calories are needed to raise the temperature of 5kg of water from 35℃ to 90℃?

A．55.　　B．175.　　C．325.　　D．275

（　）3. Which statement agrees with the passage and the charts above?

A．You need more calories for swimming than for mountain climbing.

B．Food contains energy in the form of carbohydrates, proteins and fuel.

C．Different people need different amounts of energy depending on their age, sex, and the activities they are in.

D．3 grams of milk provides 16.6 calories because carbohydrate provides 3.8 Cal/gm, protein 4.0 Cal/gm, and fat 8.8 Cal/gm.

（　）4. Which statement is TRUE according to the chart above?

A．A child aged 8 requires more than 3 times the amount of calories that a baby does.

B．A boy aged 16 requires nearly twice the amount of calories that a boy aged 8 does.

C．An office worker requires the same amount of calories per day as a woman feeding a baby does.

D．A farmer requires nearly 1.5 times the amount of calories that an office worker does.

5. Also, the number of calories you use at any one moment normally depends on the activity you are in.

四、回眸高考

强化训练 55

（2014 年单招试题阅读理解 C 篇）

It's 7:45 in the morning, and 26-year-old Steve Clarkson is going to work. He puts on his jacket, and picks up his mobile phone and laptop. As he leaves the house, he turns on his MP3 player and puts on his headphones. He is ready to go.

Today, for millions of people, gadgets like Clarkson's are a normal part of life. "I'm a

reporter for a magazine, and I'm usually not in the office. My mobile phone and laptop help me to do my work both on the road and at home," says Clarkson. Today many people can check e-mails, send messages, or surf the web, using their mobile phones.

Tina Fang is studying photography in New York City. "Some of these gadgets are expensive, but they can save your money in the long run. I have a digital camera. I can use it to take eighty pictures and shoot videos at the same time. I listen to music on my MP3 player, and I can download and read books on it, too. I use the camera and MP3 for both learning and fun."

It's now 9:45. Steven Clarkson gets an e-mail from his 17-year-old sister. She has a gadget that lets her send e-mails, play games, and take notes. She is in class right now. "I e-mailed her back. I told her to stop playing, and pay attention," laughs Clarkson. "These gadgets are fun, but sometimes they can distract people, too."

（　）1. What does Steve do when he leaves his house?

A．He puts on his shirt.　　B．He puts down his mobile phone.

C．He turns on his MP3 player.　　D．He turns down his headphones.

（　）2. What is Steve's profession?

A．A web engineer.　　B．A clerk in an office.

C．A reporter for a magazine.　　D．A photographer in New York City.

（　）3. Tina Fang uses her digital camera to _____.

A．take pictures and shoot videos　　B．listen to music

C．download and read books　　D．send e-mails

（　）4. When Steve gets an e-mail from his sister, she is _____.

A．on her way home　　B．on the playground

C．at home　　D．in class

（　）5. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?

A．Modern Technology　　B．Gadgets for Work and Play

C．Life without Digital Products　　D．A meaningful Day

6. 将文中画线的句子翻译成中文，并将答案写在答题卡上对应处。

Today many people can check e-mails, send messages, or surf the web, using their mobile phones.

专题六　任务型阅读

一、考纲要求

主要考查考生的综合阅读理解能力。

二、解题策略

1. 快速浏览全文，尤其是每段的第一句话，理清文章的写作思路和基本结构。

2. 分析表格结构，理清其层次关系，特别注意表格前的小标题（它通常就是段落和表格的主题句）。一般出题类型有下列几种：

① 全文的标题或小标题。（在标题中缺少一个关键词）

② 表格中给出各段大意，在给出的信息中缺少一些关键内容。

3. 精读。确定表格中某一行或某一列与文章某一段某一行之间的对应关系，寻找确定答案的关键词语，注意以下两点：

① 有时表格中的语境悄悄发生了变化，填写时要注意所填单词的结构和形式是否符合表格中上下文的要求（注意单词的拼写、短语的搭配、词性、大小写）。

② 有时答案是不能直接在文章中找到原句或原词的，这时需要变通。如，主动与被动，动词与名词，名词与形容词，名词的单复数等。

③ 务必要看懂表格内横向单元格和纵向单元格之间的逻辑关系。

4. 复查。通观全篇文章，务必再仔细核对文章和任务，确保准确性。

样题

Every school has its own set of rules to keep students disciplined. The rules change from one school to another. Some schools are much stricter than others. There are also some rules that look strange or funny to us. Here are some funny school rules.

Japan　Most schools demand that students wear uniforms, such as sports suits or skirts. But many Japanese schools even regulate the color of underwear! They also demand that girls' white socks be folded in a certain way and boys' heads be shaved. Other Japanese schools tell students that they may not date, to go movies, leave home after sunset or play video games without permission from the school.

The US　For safety at some US schools, students must have a pair of indoor shoes to change into at school every day. This makes sure students won't fall over on the slippery floors and keeps the schools clean. Gum（口香糖）chewing is not allowed in many US school buildings, as it is difficult to clean up. And if students chew gum in class, they may not focus on their study.

Britain　Strange hairstyles are not allowed in some Britain schools. But they might allow

students to wear certain hairstyles during the World Cup. Two students had a special design shaved into their hair during 2002 World Cup. But they were not accepted by their school after that because the school said the rules had changed since then.

Country	Special school rules
Japan	1）Students wear __1__, such as sports suits and skirts. 2）Girls' white socks should be folded in a certain way and boys' heads are shaved.
The US	1）Students wear a pair of __2__ shoes at some US schools. 2）Many US school don't allow students to chew gum.
__3__	1）Strange hairstyles are not allowed in some Britain schools. 2）Schools might allow __4__ hairstyles during the World Cup.

【答案解析】

1. uniforms。根据文章第二段第一句可找到这个单词。

2. indoor。根据文章第三段第一句可找到答案。

3. Britain。根据表格中纵向单元格之间的逻辑关系；上两格是 Japan，The US，那么这一格根据文章必然是 Britain。

4. Wearing. 对比文章最后一段第二句“ But they might allow students to wear certain hairstyles during the World Cup. ”与表格中“ Schools might allow _____ hairstyles during the World Cup. ”，可知这里需要填动词“ wear ”的恰当形式，表格在考查“ allow doing ”这一短语，所以答案为“ wearing ”。

三、练习

Passage 1

China won title at the world table tennis championships earlier this month. We were also the top of the Sudirman Cup world badminton championships. It seems that domination(统治, 垄断) in the games has been strong. But many people, including players, coaches and fans, wonder whether this is good or bad for the sport.

“It's dangerous,” Cai Zhenghua, the country's most senior table tennis official, said, “If one association keeps winning everything, it's good for that association but it's not good for the sport. It's our duty to offer the secret of our success to the world.”

“I don't think domination is a good thing,” said Tom Bacher, president of Badminton Europe. “I believe it would be beneficial for the sport to be a better spread.”

Some players and coaches thought the game would become boring if Chinese kept on winning.

Raphael Sachetat, chief editor of the Badzine. info website, said he worried badminton would lose popularity（普及）and would be thrown out of the Olympics if China continued to dominate. However, Sachetat conceded（承认）that China's success could improve levels of play

throughout the sport as other nations worked harder to catch up.

"We are really in awe of（对……感到害怕）the Chinese players' ability so it is not a negative thing. It's up to us to train harder and to learn from them." said Soctland's Gordon Thomson, 23, a singles player.

	The subject discussion: Is domination good or bad for sport?	
	It's good	It's bad
Cai Zhenghua	To offer the __1__ of our success to the world	It's dangerous to the sport.
Tom Bacher	Domination isn't a good thing. It's __2__ for the sport to be a better spread.	
Raphael Sachetat	To __3__ levels of play throughout the sport.	The game will lose __4__. The game will be thrown out of the Olympics.

1._____ 2._____ 3._____ 4._____

Passage 2

Many of us don't pay much attention to the importance of eye care. It is said that if you take care of your body, then you can surely be healthy. That is why our eyes should be given a lot of care. Natural eye care should be put in a number one place.

There are several causes leading to poor eyesight like not enough food, genes（基因）and aging（变老）.Televisions, computers and reading are also the causes of having poor eyesight. If you work in front of the computer, it is best to take a break every once in a while. Something dirty can cause redness and they will make you feel uncomfortable. It is bad for your eyes, too. If this happens, you'd better clean your eyes with cold water. You must also try your best to protect your eyes from harmful things. For example, sunglasses are not just for fashion but they can also serve as a great way to protect your eyesight from UV rays.

Eating healthy foods will do good to your eyesight. Remember that vitamins A,C and E are good for eyes. Try to eat food groups that have these vitamins. And you should do eye exercises because exercise protects your eyesight, too. If a person exercises regularly and eats the right kind of food, his eyes will stay in good condition for a long time.

All above are natural ways of eye care that help us keep healthy eyes. In a word, eye care is very important, no matter how old a person is.

Problem	Many of us have poor eyesight because of paying little attention to eye care.
Causes	Solutions
Not enough food, genes and aging can __1__ poor eyesight.	Eating healthy foods which are rich in vitamins A,C and E, will do good to our eyesight.
Televisions and computers are the causes of poor eyesight as __2__ as reading.	It's best to take a break now and then. Do eye exercises regularly.

Something dirty can make your eyes red and they will make you feel uncomfortable.	Clean your eyes by __3__ cold water.
UV rays can do __4__ to our eyes.	You'd better wear sunglasses to protect your eyesight from UV rays.
Conclusion	All in all, it's very important for us to care for our eyes.

1._____　2._____　3._____　4._____

Passage 3

Sanya is in Hainan Province in southern China. It's still warm in winter. It's about 15℃ in the afternoon. Sanya has lovely beaches. The price of a hotel room is about 320 yuan a night.	
Harbin is in northern China. It's very cold in winter, sometimes -30℃. Tourists need to wear warm clothes. There is an Ice and Snow Festival in winter. A hotel room is about 230 yuan a night.	Beijing is not very cold in winter. It's about -10℃.It doesn't often rain or snow. Hotels usually cut their prices in winter. About 200 yuan a night is enough.

请根据上文内容完成下表：

City	Weather	__1__ of a hotel room
Sanya	It's still __2__ in winter.	About 320 yuan a night.
__3__	It's very cold in winter.	About __4__ yuan a night.
Beijing	It's not very cold in winter. It doesn't often rain or snow.	About 200 yuan a night.

1._____　2._____　3._____　4._____

Passage 4

What is a hurricane?



You may already know that hurricanes are storms that can cause devastating（毁灭性的）waves, wind, and rain. They happen during "Hurricane Season," which is from June 1st until November 30th in the Atlantic Ocean and from May 15th until November 30th in the Pacific Ocean.

Categories（类别）of Hurricanes

There are five categories of hurricanes, which are based on wind speeds. The categories help people know how much damage a hurricane may cause because the greater the wind speed, the more dangerous the storm. For example, a Category 5 hurricane has winds over 155 miles per hour, which are strong enough to destroy the buildings along the shorelines completely.

Hurricane Dangers

When a hurricane happens together with heavy rainfall, there can be a devastating flood. The centre of a hurricane is called the eye. While most of a hurricane has dangerously strong winds, the eye is actually a calm area in the storm. When the eye of a hurricane passes over land, people might think that it's over, but before long the wind and rain increase again as the second part of the hurricane moves through.

Hurricane Safety Tips

There is no way to stop a hurricane or make it change direction, so if you ever find yourself in the path of a hurricane, be sure to remember the following safety tips.

● Be sure you have a radio, batteries, fresh drinking water, and enough food.

● Tell neighbors, friends, and family members your emergency plans. Tell them where you'll go if you need to leave your home.

● If you live near the ocean, leave your home and travel to a safe place. You could stay with a friend or a family member, in a hotel / motel, or in an emergency shelter area.

● Stay inside during the storm. You could be seriously injured if you go outside.

Hurricanes	
Characteristics (特征)	Hurricane Season usually lasts about 6 months in the Atlantic Ocean and 6.5 months in the Pacific Ocean. Devastating waves, wind, and rain are usually the __1__ of hurricanes.
Categories	Hurricanes have been __2__ into five categories by scientists, based on wind speeds.
__3__	When a hurricane comes together with heavy rainfall, a terrible flood may happen. The eye is the center of a hurricane. Soon after it passes, the wind and rain increase again.
Safety Tips	It's impossible to stop a hurricane or change its direction. Don't forget the safety tips if you find yourself in the path of a hurricane. Stay inside during the storm, __4__ you could be seriously injured.

1._____ 2._____ 3._____ 4._____

Passage 5

We all need a healthy environment, but we produce waster every day and it does harm to our environment. Though we are young, we can still do something to help. In fact, even the simplest everyday activities can make a real difference to the environment. Here are some ideas for you to live a green life.

Remember these three words; reduce, reuse and recycle.

Reduce means " use less". Don't waste things. This saves money and reduces pollution and waste going into the environment. Before we buy something new, think if it is really necessary or maybe the old one will be just as good! When we do buy things, choose local products if possible, and try not to buy too many things from abroad.

Reuse mean " use again". Use things for as long as possible. When we buy things, make sure that they last a long time. We should take care of them so that they will last, and we should repair them if we can instead of throwing them away and buying new ones. Don't use a paper cup or a paper bag. It's better to use a china cup and a lunch box because you can use them again.

Recycle means " change things into something else". Although it takes energy to change something into something else, it's better than throwing things away or burning them. Find out what can be recycled in your neighborhood and take part in recycling programmes. We should also buy products made from recycled materials, such as recycled paper, to help save trees.

Title: ___1___ to Live a Green Life

We produce waste every day and it is harmful to us. We can do something to help.		
Ideas	**Dos**	**Don'ts**
To reduce	Use less * Try to save something	* Don't buy too many things from foreign ___2___.
To reuse	Use again * Use things for us long as possible. * Buy things that last long. * Take care of things or repair the old things.	* Don't use paper ___3___ or bags.
To recycle	Change things into something else. * Join in recycling programmes. * Buy ___4___ made from recycled materials.	Don't throw things away or burn them.

1._____　2._____　3._____　4._____

Passage 6

"USA? Britain? Which country is better to study in?" We often hear such discussions. As China opens its door, it is a dream for many Chinese students to study abroad. They want to learn about the outside world.

It's true that studying abroad can help students develop themselves. Their foreign language skills will be improved and it may be easier to find jobs.

But there are problems that should be considered. Language is the first. Students must spend a lot of time learning another language.

Students must also learn to live without parents' care and deal with all kinds of things they haven't had to do before, like looking after themselves. There are reports about Chinese students abroad running into an ocean of difficulties and giving up finally. When they have to take care of themselves, it is hard for students to study well.

Finally, studying abroad brings a heavy burden (负担) to the family. For most Chinese parents, the cost of studying abroad is very high. But is it worth it?

We know that there are many famous people who have achieved success through their hard

work in China. Liu Xiang is a good example. Once an American teacher invited him there, but he refused. He kept training hard with his Chinese teacher. He surprised the world when he won a gold medal at the Athens Olympic Games. So when you wonder which country is better to study in, think again.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Title: Studying at __1__ or abroad</td></tr>
<tr><td>Phenomenon（现象）</td><td>Studying abroad has become a dream for Chinese students.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Advantages</td><td>◆ It is helpful to the future development of Chinese students.</td></tr>
<tr><td>◆ It helps to __2__ foreign language skills.</td></tr>
<tr><td>◆ It enables Chinese students to find jobs more easily.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">__3__</td><td>◆ It takes Chinese students too much time to learn a foreign language.</td></tr>
<tr><td>◆ It's hard for Chinese students to get used to the life abroad without parents' care.</td></tr>
<tr><td>◆ Parents may be under pressure（压力）because the cost of studying abroad is very high.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Purpose: To tell us studying abroad is not the only way to be __4__ by describing Liu Xiang's example.</td></tr>
</table>

1._____ 2._____ 3._____ 4._____

Passage 7

World Sleep Day, on 21st March, was created to bring attention to the growing number of sleep problems. Sleep is a natural part of human life, but many people in the modern world don't realize it's very important. As a result, sleep problems are quite common.

In 2011, scientists at the University of Athens in Greece did a survey（调查）of over 35,000 people in 10 countries around the world, including China, Belgium and South Africa. Among the people, 24 percent said that they did not sleep well, 31.6 percent were diagnosed（诊断）with insomnia（失眠）. In addition, 30.7 percent of them have visited doctors for help with sleep problems and 11.6 percent said that they felt very sleepy during the day.

The survey found that many people suffer the effects of poor quality sleep, some examples can't fall asleep and often wake up in the middle of the night. The main reasons of the problems are pressure from school or work and a fast pace（节奏）of life, but noise pollution and light pollution also affect sleep and cause poor quality sleep. The survey also found that large numbers of people find it hard to sleep at night. The short term effects of this are tiredness and trouble concentrating（专心）. If this happens for a long time, the risk of gaining weight and having a heart attack may increase.

There are many things you can do to improve the quality of your sleep. First, you should have regular sleep habits. Try to go to bed and wake up around the same time each day. You also

need to make your bedroom a cool, dark, quiet place to sleep so that heat, light and noise do not disturb you. At night, you should also avoid things that contain caffeine, such as chocolate, coffee, tea and many soft drinks, as caffeine may keep you from sleeping.

Getting a good night's sleep is important for everyone. By following the advice above, you can rest better at night and work better during the day.

Have a good sleep	
World Sleep Day	World Sleep Day was created to make people understand the __1__ of sleep.
A survey by scientists	Of 35 000 people in 10 countries in the world, there were 24 percent of the people __2__ they didn't sleep well. 31.6 percent were diagnosed with insomnia. 30.7 percent have gone to a doctor for sleep problems. 11.6 percent of the people feel sleepy during the day.
Causes of sleep problems	People feel the pressure from school or work. A fast pace of life leads to sleep problems as well. Noise and light pollution also cause sleep and cause poor quality sleep.
Results of sleep problems	Some people aren't able to fall asleep and often wake up at night. Feeling __3__, people find it hard to concentrate. It's highly possible that sleepless people easily gain weight and have a heart attack.
__4__ to improve sleep quality	Have regular sleep habits. Make your bedroom cool, dark and quiet Don't drink anything with caffeine at bedtime.

1._____　　2._____　　3._____　　4._____

Passage 8

Nowadays in school life, a lot of students develop a fear of tests. It's not because tests are something to be afraid of. Most students are afraid of tests mainly because they don't have enough self-confidence and they don't always think they are well prepared. If you follow the tips below, it's not difficult to overcome your fear of tests.

People who know that they are not well-prepared are usually those who fear test most. However, most students don't know when they are truly prepared for a test. As long as you know that you have studied well and long enough, you have reason to believe that you are well-prepared.

Be confident about yourself. Confidence before a test can bring about two things: either you fail the test and feel as if your confidence was unfounded（毫无根据）or you could actually do well in the test because of your confidence. Some students find that they experience the first result. However, this is only because those students might not have followed the first tip mentioned above. As long as you have studied well, you will be more confident of your chance to succeed in a test. If you feel as if you have not studied hard enough, then you will not be as

confident as you should be.

Ask your teacher in advance (提前) about the material that is going to be covered in the test. In this way, you will know what you should prepare for and you can get confidence in the test. But you have to be brave enough to ask. Most students do not ask unless their teacher gives the information first, so make sure that you ask.

You should know that tests are only telling if you have got the knowledge, not how good or bad your IQ is. So, even if you do badly in one test, you should know that there are other tests to come. As long as you think that there is another tomorrow, you can overcome your fear of a test. However, make sure that you are going to prepare well for the other tests.

Fear can be a problem in the process of achieving success. However, with the right attitude and preparations, you can overcome your fear of tests by using these tips.

___1___ to overcome your fear of tests

Advice	Prepare well	You should make good preparations
		If you have studied well and long enough, you would be ___2___ that you are well-prepared.
	Be confident	Confidence before a test can have two results. ●You could fail the test and feel as if your confidence was unfounded. ●Your confidence could lead to your ___3___ in the test.
		Confidence comes from studying hard enough.
	Ask your teacher	You can ask your teacher what material the test will ___4___ .
	Hold a positive attitude	Keep in mind that tests just test your knowledge and don't lose heart because of one test failure.
Conclusion		Right attitude and preparations are the key factors in overcoming your fear of tests.

1._____ 2._____ 3._____ 4._____

Passage 9

It seems school children all over the world complain about their school food. Cherie Blair, wife of former British Prime Minister Tony Blair, said that she would prepare a packed lunch for her son if school dinners do not improve. So what do students of your age eat for lunch at school?

Japan

High schools have canteens, which serve everything from noodles to rice, but not burgers and chips. Other children bring food from home such as cold rice balls, meat or fish, pickles (泡菜) and vegetables.

Students take home a menu for the coming month containing notes on nutrition value. Twice a year parents are invited to have a taste of the food. The class with the fewest leftovers (剩饭)

at the end of the month receives a prize.

United States

A typical menu from a US school is made up of a hamburger with fried potatoes or roast chicken, lettuce and pickles, fruit and cookies. School lunches must also provide at least one-third of the daily dietary allowances（定量）of protein, vitamin A, vitamin C, iron, calcium and calories.

Australia

Meat pies, sausage rolls and hot dogs are all traditional dishes in Australian school shops. But as the nation pays more attention to children's health, healthier foods have started to find their way onto school menus.

Many schools have used a traffic light system. The sale of red-labeled foods, including pastries, chocolate and soft drinks, is served only twice a week. Healthier green-labeled foods such as sushi, sandwiches, corn and watermelon, however, are available every day.

In some schools, students have a choice of up to 89 foods to choose from, including popcorn and rice.

South Africa

Most of South Africa's schools do not serve meals at all. Classes end at 1:30 p.m. and students get their own lunches. Many students bring food from home, usually sandwiches.

Fast food and fried food sell the best among students, which has led to a rise in obesity among children. But as more people began to realize the fact that being too fat may cause different diseases, some schools in towns have led the way towards better nutrition（营养）. Now students at these schools are provided with lunches of porridge with vegetables, such as cabbages, onions, beans, carrots and tomatoes.

Schools serve different foods in different __1__.	
Japan	In high schools, children can buy everything, such as noodles and rice. But they can't buy burgers and chips from canteens. Some children bring food from their homes. The class will get a prize if they have the fewest leftovers in a __2__.
United States	Children can get one third of daily nutrition from their lunch at school.
Australia	School shops __3__ students with traditional dishes. The sale of green-labeled foods is served every day, but Red-labeled foods are sold once a week.
South Africa	Students like eating fast food and fried food so that they are overweight. Students in some schools in towns can eat vegetables to __4__ fit.

1._____　　2._____　　3._____　　4._____

Passage 10

Life is always changing. What will life be like in the future? Here are some predictions（预测）.

The first prediction is about people. People may live for up to 120 years and keep healthy by using new technology. The number of people over a hundred years old will go from 135,000

today to 2.2 million by 2050.

The second prediction is about money and shopping. Worldwide e-business will become more successful with online shops that sell special products for each person. The products people order will be brought to their houses the next day.

The third prediction is about the environment. The technology for making energy from wind and the sun is developing quickly. In the future wind and sun energy will become much cheaper and more countries will use it. The air in big cities will also become much cleaner as a result.

There are also predictions on society and culture. The Internet will help to create more worldwide friendships. Families may spend more time together as people won't need to go out to work so much.

The last prediction is about technology itself. The robots（机器人）will do most hard work. People will be able to wear some computers that look like watches. They will give people lots of information about their body and keep them healthy.

What will life be like in the future?	
People	They will live ___1___ and be healthier with the help of technology.
Money and shopping	People can order things on online shops and ___2___ the products the next day.
___3___	People can get energy from the sun and wind more easily. There will be less air pollution in cities.
Society and culture	More worldwide friendships will be ___4___. Families can spend more time together.
Technology	Most hard work will be done by robots. And computers like watches will help people keep an eye on their own health.

1._____ 2._____ 3._____ 4._____

专题七　书面表达

一、考纲要求

根据所给提示与要求完成一篇80～100词的作文，尤其注重应用文书写能力的考查，如申请、通知、活动安排、简介等。考生应能做到：

（1）准确使用英语语法，选用恰当的词汇、句型；

（2）清楚、连贯、完整地表达自己的意思；

（3）格式、行文正确，书写规范。

二、样题和练习

样题 1　Introductions of Characters 人物介绍

假如你是李华，申请到一家外企公司工作。对方要求你用英文写一篇短文，介绍自己的情况，短文应包括下表所列内容。

姓名	李华	出生年月	1995 年 5 月	出生地	南京
学历	2002 年～2008 年 光明小学；2008 年～2014 年 江宁职业中学				
所学主要课程	语文、数学、英语、物理、化学、计算机				
特长	英语、计算机（去年在全校计算机竞赛中获得第一名）				
业余爱好	游泳、流行音乐				

注意

1. 情况介绍采用短文形式，须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯；

2. 词数 100 左右。

思路点拨

通过审题我们知道，此题是说明文性质的人物介绍。人物介绍包括：自我介绍、名人简历、名人轶事等。自我介绍的文章要以第一人称来写，要求简洁明了，把要介绍的情况按照逻辑顺序一一讲清楚即可。

【范文】

My name is Li Hua. I was born in Nanjing in May 1995. I studied in Guangming Primary School from 2002 to 2008. After that I went to Jiangning Professional School of Nanjing and left school this summer. The main subjects I studied at school include Chinese, maths, English, physics, chemistry and computer. I like English and computer best and I am very good at them. Last year I won the first prize in the school computer competition. In my spare time I enjoy listening to popular music. My favourite sports are football and swimming.

考点精炼 1

在今年父亲节来临之际，请你根据下表提供的信息，写一篇以“ My father ”为题的英语作文，介绍其大体情况，并谈谈你对“ 父亲 ”的评价。

年龄	40 岁
外貌	又高又胖，短头发，大眼睛
职业	数学教师（工作努力，上课生动活泼，深受学生喜爱）
性格	诚实，善良
爱好	打乒乓球

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。

样题 2　Introductions of Things 事物介绍

请根据要点以“ The Spring Festival ”为题写一篇 100 字左右的短文。要点如下：

1. 春节是中国的传统节日。一般在每年的一月或二月来临。

2. 春节期间男女老少都穿戴新衣服、新鞋子、新帽子。他们走亲访友，聚在一起吃喝玩乐，过着非常愉快的生活。他们谈论工作学习，各自所取得的成就，以及未来的打算。

3. 春节是中国人最喜爱的节日之一。

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。

思路点拨

此题是节日介绍。此类介绍性的说明文，要抓住事物的主要特征和本质，最后可以加上说明者对所描述事物的看法和评价，表达自己的观点。

【范文】

The Spring Festival is a traditional festival in China, just as Christmas in the western countries. It usually falls in January or February every year. On the Spring Festival Eve, all the family members get together to have a big dinner, then wait to say goodbye to the old year and greet the new one. During the Spring Festival people, whether boys or girls, men or women, young or old, all wear new clothes, new shoes or new hats. They visit their friends and relatives and get together eating, drinking, playing and having a good time. They lead a happy life. They also talk about their work, studies, the achievements they got and the plans for the future.

The Spring Festival is one of the most popular festivals of Chinese people. I like it very much.

考点精炼 2

随着年龄的增长，我们的课外活动领域会扩大，关注点也会增多。假如你们学校的 English Newsletter 正在以 My After-School Activities 为题举行征文活动，请根据下列表格提

示的内容，用英语写一篇征文。

	活　动	关注点
以前	看电视；打计算机游戏等	自己
现在	和家长交流；做志愿者；……	家庭、……
我们在成长，我们应该……		

注意

（1）表达清楚，语法正确，上下文连贯；

（2）必须包括表格中所有的相关信息，并适当发挥；

（3）词数 100 词左右（征文的开头已给出，不计入总词数）；

（4）不得使用真实姓名、校名和地名等。

My After-School Activities

As we grow, both our after-school activities and what we care about are becoming more and more.

样题 3　Letters of Application 求职信

假如你叫李华，最近你在《扬子晚报》上看到一则招聘广告：四通公司（Stone Company）招聘 10 名计算机工程师。你想去应聘，根据下列提示写一封 100 词左右的求职信，可适当增加内容。

1. 出生日期：1992 年 5 月；性别：男；
2. 学历：南京工业大学计算机系毕业；
3. 资历：学校软件设计大赛一等奖；英语比赛二等奖；
4. 特长：英语、音乐、体育等；
5. 联系电话：86265566。

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；

（2）词数 100 词左右。

思路点拨

本题是一封求职信，因此格式和用词都应当比较正规。求职信的内容大体分为三部分：写信的目的、自我介绍（能力、资质、工作经历、品质等）、联系方式。求职信主要用第一人称和现在时态。注意表达时将内容按照一定的逻辑顺序写出来，千万不要逐句翻译，还要根据文章内容做适当调整。最后，通读全文，检查错误。

【范文】

Dear sir,

My name is Li Hua. I have read your advertisement in *Yangzi Evening*, I think I am fit for the job.

I am a graduate from Computer Department of Nanjing Industry University.When I was at

university, I got the first place in the competition for computer software design and the second place in the English competition.

I'm 23, male, and in good health. And I have many hobbies, such as sports, music and so on. What's more, I always get on well with people.

I know Stone Company is very famous and successful and if I'm given a chance to work there, I'm sure I can do it well.

My phone number is 86265566. I am looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

考点精炼 3

某公司招聘一名销售经理，年龄 20～30 岁。要求：1. 大学本科毕业；2. 英语好，最好有海外留学经历；3. 熟练操作计算机；4. 有团队合作精神。

假如你是李华，从报纸上获悉此消息，想应聘此岗位。你的年龄为 25 岁，2012 年 7 月毕业于南京大学，曾参加南京市英语演讲比赛获一等奖，曾留学加拿大。回国后一直在深圳一家计算机公司工作。你的邮箱是 lihua@126.com.

请根据以上提示写一封 100 词左右的信，信的开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear sir,

Yours faithfully,
Li Hua

样题 4　Letters of Acceptance 接受函

假如你是李华，住在南京市江河街 127 号，收到了位于南京市湖南路 47 号的凤凰公司的录用信，告知你获得了 2015 年夏季的市场部实习生的职位，实习期为 2015 年 6 月 1 日至 2015 年 8 月 1 日，每周工作 40 个小时，工作职责是帮助网站设计与维护及公司小册子的开发。请用英文给凤凰公司人力资源管理部主任 Jane Smith 写一封 100 词左右的信，写信时间是 2015 年 5 月 10 日，内容要点如下：

1. 表示你接受实习生这一职位。
2. 表示知晓实习期的时间及工作职责。
3. 表示感谢并承诺努力工作。

参考词汇：人力资源管理部 Human Resources Management，凤凰 phoenix，网站维护 website maintenance，小册子 brochure

思路点拨

接收函是申请工作者接受用人单位提供的职位，内容常包括：1. 接受所提供的职位；2.接受工作时间段、职责及相关附带说明的事宜。3. 表示感谢并承诺努力工作。

【范文】

127 River Street
Nanjing
May 10, 2015

Ms. Jane Smith
Human Resources Management
Phoenix Company
47 Hunan Road
Nanjing
Dear Ms. Smith,

I am very glad to accept your offer to join Phoenix Company as a Marketing Intern for the 2015 summer. As written in the job offer, my starting date will be June 1, 2015, and the ending date will be August 1, 2015. I also understand my working hours per week is 40 and my job duties are to assist in website design and maintenance and the development of company brochures.

Thank you again, Ms. Smith, for providing me with a wonderful opportunity. I will try my best to work hard and I am looking forward to working with you.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

考点精炼 4

假如你是李华，收到了 XYZ 公司的通知，告知你获得了法律助理职位，开始的年薪两万四千元人民币加健康保险，并将于 2015 年 3 月 1 日起上班，每周工作 40 个小时。请用英文给公司人力资源管理部经理 David Smith 写一封 100 词左右的信，内容要点如下：

1. 表示你接受法律助理这一职位；
2. 表示知晓薪酬情况和开始上班的时间；
3. 表示感谢并承诺努力工作。

参考词汇：健康保险 health coverage

样题 5　Letters of Complaint 投诉信

假如你是李华，在一家商店买了一台电视机，发现质量有问题后，去跟营业员进行交涉。但是编号为 20 的服务员对你态度粗鲁，不予受理，为此，你给商店经理写一封投诉信，要求商店调查此事并且给出一个合理的解释。

要求：词数 100 左右。

思路点拨

写投诉信，首先要写标题“A Letter of Complaint”或“A Complaint Letter”。接着写需要如实反映的情况；事情发生的背景和问题（即投诉的事实和理由）；解决问题的措施、具体的赔偿要求等；最后写结语（希望尽快得到回复）。必要时提供与事实相关的真实的证明材料，如各种票据、合同等。

【范文】

A Letter of Complaint

Dear sir / madam,

Now I am writing to tell you that I bought a TV set from your shop several days ago. However, when I brought it home and turned it on, I found it didn't work properly. So I took it back to the shop and told the assistant what had happened. To my surprise, your assistant, whose badge number was 20, didn't help me solve the problem. On the contrary, he shouted at me rudely and refused to examine it.

I hope you will look into the matter and give me a reasonable explanation. Thank you for your consideration and I am expecting an early reply.

Sincerely yours,
Li Hua

考点精炼 5

假如你是李华，2015 年 4 月 19 日在一家商店花 30 元买了三盒牛奶，结账后发现牛奶已变质，你去跟营业员进行交涉，要求退款或至少换牛奶。但是编号为 15 的服务员对你态度粗鲁，不予受理，为此，你给商店经理写一封投诉信，要求商店调查此事并且给出一个合理的解释。

要求：词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：退款 refund

样题 6　Letters of Adjustment 调解信

假如你是 David Watt，是一家电子公司产品销售服务部的经理，最近收到了林小姐 2 月 3 日写的一封投诉信，投诉所买的产品质量有问题，要求调换产品。现在请你写一封信答复这位投诉者，内容包括以下几点：

1. 理解她的投诉并表示歉意；
2. 说明存在问题的原因并保证以后不犯类似的错误；
3. 表示已经发送新的产品，期待再次为她服务。

要求：词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：失灵、发生故障 malfunction，发送 dispatch

思路点拨

调解信，实际上是对投诉信的书面回复。不管投诉的事情怎么琐细，认真答复每一个投诉是极其重要的。因此，需要及时确认收到投诉信，并进行公正、真实、有礼有节的答复。写调解信时，包括以下步骤：

1. 承认收到投诉信并表示感谢；
2. 对所造成的不便表示道歉；
3. 根据具体情况，表示接受或拒绝接受投诉；
4. 表明解决问题的措施；
5. 表示期待进一步合作。

【范文】

An adjustment letter

Dear Miss Lin,

Thank you for your letter of February 3. We fully understand the situation, and we admit it's the error made by our company, please accept our sincere apology to you for it. We agree that the usual high standards of our products were not met in this instance. This was caused by an unexpected malfunction. We understand how disappointing it can be when your expectations are not met. We assure you that this will not happen again. We have dispatched the new items.

At last, we really feel sorry to give you inconvenience and apologize again. We will do our best to help you. We look forward to serving you again.

Yours sincerely,
David Watt

考点精炼 6

假如你是李华，是网上书店服务部的经理，最近收到了很多投诉网上销售服务的信件，例如，缺少 NBA 等体育类的书籍；发货时间长等问题。现在请你写一封信给这些投诉者，内容包括以下几点：

1. 理解他们的投诉并表示歉意；

2. 指出改善服务的措施：扩大书单，增加像 HOOPCHINA，KOBE 等篮球杂志；缩短交货时间等；

3. 再次表示歉意。

要求：词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：不足的 insufficient，扩大 expand

样题 7　Letters of Apology 致歉信

假如你是李明，你的朋友 Ann 邀请你于明日晚上到她家里共进晚餐，但是你要忙于准备后天的一门重要考试，无法赴约。请你给 Ann 写一封致歉信，解释原因，并建议考试后见面。如果可以的话请随时给你打电话，你非常期待能和她愉快地聊天。

要求：词数 100 左右。

思路点拨

道歉信通常包括以下内容：

1. 表明写信目的是表示歉意；

2. 道歉的缘由、出现差错的原因；

3. 提出弥补措施；

4. 请求原谅。

写道歉信的语言要诚挚，解释的理由要真实，不要显出丝毫的虚情假意。好的道歉信不仅会取得对方的谅解，还会增进彼此的感情。

【范文】

A Letter of Apology

Dear Ann,

Thank you for your invitation to dinner at your home tomorrow evening. Unfortunately, it is much to my regret that I cannot join you and your family because I will be fully occupied with an important exam coming the day after tomorrow. I feel terribly sorry for missing the chance of such a happy get-together, and I hope that all of you enjoy a good time. Is it possible for you and me to have a private meeting afterward? If so, please don't hesitate to call me about your preferable date. I do long for a pleasant chat with you.

Please allow me to say sorry again.

Yours sincerely,
Li Ming

考点精炼 7

假如你是李明，你的网友 Paul 应你邀请到北京度假。他的航班早上 4:20 分到达北京首都机场，但你无法按时接机。你最早在一个小时后到机场。请就此写一封道歉信，并说明相应安排。内容如下：

1. 他在机场旅客大厅边吃早餐边等你；

2. 由于从未谋面，所以说明见面特征，比如：你中等个子，留有小胡须；左臂下夹着一份卷起的早报等。

要求：（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯。

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：小胡子 moustache，卷起 tuck

样题 8　Letters of Recommendation 推荐信

假如你是李华，想推荐你的朋友王林到 Mr. Brown 的公司工作。请根据下表为他写一封推荐信。

姓名	王林	性别	男	国籍	中国
出生地	南京	婚否	未婚	出生日期	1993 年 8 月 21 日
通信地址	南京市人民路 148 号				
毕业学校	北京工业大学		专业	计算机软件	
成绩	在四年的学习中，功课非常优秀。每年都获一等奖学金，而且已经获得了优秀毕业生的称号。				
其他	热情、积极上进、具有很大潜力。不仅学习快，而且善于用逻辑解决难题。				

要求：

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：北京工业大学 Beijing Industry University，奖学金 scholarship，潜力

potentiality，逻辑的 logical

思路点拨

推荐信一般由以下几个部分组成：1. 介绍部分。首先介绍推荐人与被推荐人的关系，也可以给被推荐人一个总体的评价。2. 主体部分。重点介绍被推荐人的情况，尤其有一至两个优秀品质及突出成绩，并且用有力的事实证明加以辅佐。3. 结论部分。解释被推荐人适合此项工作，并且说明被推荐人在未来会对该单位做出什么样的贡献。最后可以再次强调你对推荐该申请者充满信心，不要忘记附上联系方式。

【范文】

Dear Mr. Brown,

It is my pleasure to recommend Wang Lin, my good friend, for his application to work in your company. Wang Lin was born in Nanjing, China on August 21st, 1993. He is single and lives at No.148 Renmin Road, Nanjing city. He graduated from Beijing Industry University. His major is Computer Software. During the four years' study he has done a good job. Every year he got the first grade scholarship. And he also has got the title of the Excellent Graduate. He is an enthusiastic and progressive young man with high potentiality. He is not only quick at learning but also good at solving difficult problems with logical mind.

I am sure that it will benefit your company if he can work for your company. I strongly recommend him to your company.

Yours,
Li Hua

考点精炼 8

假如你是李华，王林是你的好友，他对布朗先生的公司感兴趣，打算到该公司谋职。请根据下面王林的简历表，用英语为他写一封推荐信。

姓名	王林	性别	男	国籍	中国
出生地	苏州	婚否	已婚	出生日期	1994 年 5 月 1 日
通信地址	苏州市人民路 50 号			电话	0512-83335550
职业	律师			学历	大学毕业
外语水平	擅长英语，懂一些日语、德语				
其他	有三年工作经历，办事认真，待人诚恳，与人和睦相处				

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。

样题 9　Letters of Invitation 邀请信

假如你是李华，与 Mike 好久没见面了，想给他写一封信，邀请他到公园海滩与你共度 7 月 20 日的周末。告诉他，你也邀请了 Turner 夫妇，他们想跟他一起钓鱼、打网球，因此，务必带上钓鱼的服装、打网球的用具。星期五晚上有一班舒适的火车，你已经在火车时刻

表上做了红色记号，星期日晚上他可以乘晚车回去。希望 Mike 告知火车班次，以便你去车站接他。

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：公园海滩 Park Beach

思路点拨

邀请信是邀请收信人参加某项活动的书信。邀请信包括宴会、舞会、晚餐、聚会、婚礼等各种邀请信件，形式上大体分为两种：一种为正规的格式（formal correspondence），亦称请柬；一种是非正式格式（informal correspondence），即一般的邀请信。邀请信包含三个方面：1. 邀请对方参加活动的内容、时间和地点；2. 与该活动有关的注意事项；3. 期待对方接受邀请。邀请信叙事一定要清楚、明白。如写给朋友，可选用活泼、真诚的言辞；如写给长辈、上级、名人等，语言则应正式、礼貌。

【范文】

Dear Mike,

I hope you don't have any plans for the weekend of July 20th, because I'd like you to spend it with us at the Park Beach.

The Turners will also be here. It has been quite some time since we have all been altogether. They would like to go fishing and play tennis with you, so be sure to bring your fishing clothes and tennis things.

There's a very good train on Friday night. I marked it in red on the timetable. You can get a late train back on Sunday night.

The Turners and I are looking forward to seeing you again, too. Be sure to let us know which train you are taking so that I can meet you at the station.

Sincerely yours,

Li Hua

考点精炼 9

假如你是李华，你的一位美国朋友 Jane 在中国学习中文两年，即将回国。现在由你给她写一封信，邀请她参加为她举办的欢送会，要点如下：

1. 祝贺她顺利通过考试，她的学习进步很大，为她骄傲；
2. 感谢她帮助你们学习英语；
3. 时间：星期六晚六点；
4. 地点：阳光俱乐部（The Sun Club）302 房间；
5. 路线：在她所住宾馆门口乘坐 332 路公共汽车可直达。

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

参考词汇：欢送会 farewell party

Dear Jane,

Congratulations on your passing all the exams.

Yours faithfully,

Li Hua

样题 10　Letters of Congratulations 祝贺信

假如你是李华，你的朋友王林最近在公司获得晋升，请你写一封信祝贺他，内容要点如下：

1. 王林在公司半年；
2. 王林勤奋、有创造力、责任感强，赢得周围人的信任；
3. 表示向他学习。

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：获得晋升 get a promotion

思路点拨

写好祝贺信的关键是要及时。一收到亲戚朋友结婚、生育、晋升、试验成功或著作出版等喜讯，就立即发信祝贺。此外，逢圣诞节、新年等节日和生日，也要向亲友和单位致以祝贺。祝贺信的用词要亲切，信中要充满真诚的喜悦之情，并且一定要写清楚祝贺对方的事情。正式的祝贺信用词严谨，常常使用套语。

【范文】

Dear Wang Lin,

I am extremely glad to hear that you have got a promotion in your company. Congratulations!

It is excellent of you to get a promotion, for after all you have just been in the company for six months. As we all know, you are always both hard-working and creative, which is essential to achieve your goals in work. Moreover, your strong sense of responsibility enables you to win trust from people around you and thus win yourself various opportunities. I think that is why you can make achievements in such a short time.

There is no doubt that you deserve the promotion. Having you as a friend, I really feel both proud and lucky because I can often learn so much from you.

Best wishes.

Sincerely yours,

Li Hua

考点精炼 10

假如你是李华，得知你的朋友 Mary 要结婚，写一封信祝贺她。内容要点如下：

1. 祝贺 Mary 结婚，嫁给了一个英俊、有才的人；

2. 询问筹备婚礼的有关情况：是否举行结婚典礼，倘若到教堂举行，那会很浪漫；到哪里度蜜月等；

3. 希望出席结婚典礼，再次表示祝贺。

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯；

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：有才的 intelligent，浪漫的 romantic，蜜月 honeymoon

样题 11　Letters of Thanks 感谢信

假如你是来自英国的旅游者 John Smith, 现用英语给十中的校长写一封感谢信, 内容如下：

1. 昨天你在公园游览时丢失钱包，里面有很多钱，还有护照和机票。

2. 当晚有一个男孩找到你的房间，送还拾到的钱包。你想给他钱作为感谢，被他拒绝。

3. 你从宾馆经理那里获悉，他是十中的学生，名叫李华。

注意

（1）须包括以上主要内容，可以适当增加细节，使内容连贯。

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：护照 passport，机票 flight ticket

思路点拨

感谢信通常由五部分构成：1. 标题（A Letter of Thanks）；2. 称呼（Dear ...）；3. 正文：写上感谢的内容和感谢的心情，有时可以分段写出感谢的事由、对方的事迹以及揭示的意义；4. 结语：写表示敬意或感谢的话；5. 落款：署名。

【范文】

A Letter of Thanks

Dear sir,

I am a tourist from the UK. Yesterday I visited the park and had a wonderful time there. But when I returned to the hotel, I found my wallet missing. There was a lot of money in it, and above all, there were also my passport and flight ticket. Naturally I was very worried. In the evening, the hotel manager brought a boy to my room. The boy handed me my wallet. I thanked him and offered him some money. But he politely refused. From the manager, I learn he is a schoolboy of your school and his name is Li Hua. Thank you for educating such an excellent student!

All the best.

Yours,
John Smith

考点精炼 11

假设你是李华，刚到英国学习、生活了两个月。在英国期间，你住在大卫（David）家

中。请用英语给他写一封感谢信，内容要点如下：

表达谢意	感谢大卫及其家人对你的悉心照顾。
难忘的事	1. 大卫很耐心地帮助你学习英语； 2. 大卫带你去游览了伦敦； 3. 大卫的母亲在你生病时送你去医院，给你做好吃的食物。
学习收获	提高了英语水平，更多地了解了英国的文化。
发出邀请	邀请大卫及其家人到你家作客。你会……

注意

（1）信件要包含所给的内容要点，其中最后一个要点应用 2 句话做适当发挥；

（2）词数 100 左右，信的开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数；

（3）信中不得出现真实的人名与校名。

参考词汇：文化 culture

Dear David,

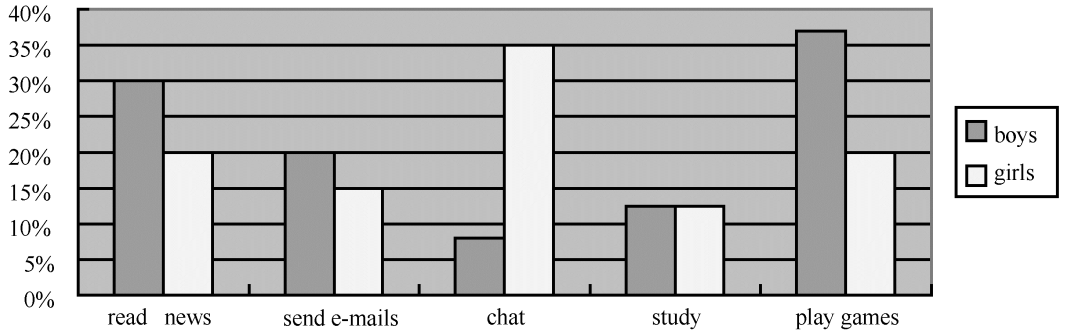
I've just got back home. _____

Yours,

Li Hua

样题 12　Letters about Chart 图表书信

假如你是李华，在最近的研究性学习当中，受《21 世纪中学生英语报》(The 21st Century) 之邀，你对你班 60 名同学（男女各半）进行了上网目的的调查。现将调查结果（如下表所示）用英语给报社的编辑写一封信，报道此事，以引起舆论的关注，并提出你的观点和建议。



注意

（1）报道应包括图表所示全部内容，可适度发挥；

（2）文章的开头与结尾已给出，不计入总词数；

（3）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：调查 make a survey

Dear editor,

I have recently made a survey among 30 boys and 30 girls in my class about their purpose of

getting on the Internet. _____

Yours,
Li Hua

思路点拨

本题是书信类的看图数据作文，是说明加议论的体裁，用第三人称和一般现在时，可以分两段描述。在写作过程中，注意一些文采的修饰，例如：连接词 but，both… and，moreover，otherwise；高级词汇 keep in touch with，as for…，use…as…，benefit from，pay attention to，altogether，in one's opinion；复杂句型 what…most 引导的主语从句；as 引导的让步状语从句；倒装语序等。

【范文】

Dear editor,

I have recently made a survey among 30 boys and 30 girls in my class about their purpose of getting on the Internet.

The girls' favorite is chatting, but few boys like it. What the boys like to do most is playing games and the girls also like it. Both boys and girls like to read news or send e-mails on the Internet. Maybe they think it's the most convenient way to get information from keeping in touch with friends. As for studying, the numbers of boys and girls are equal, but altogether only several of them will use the Internet as a tool to study.

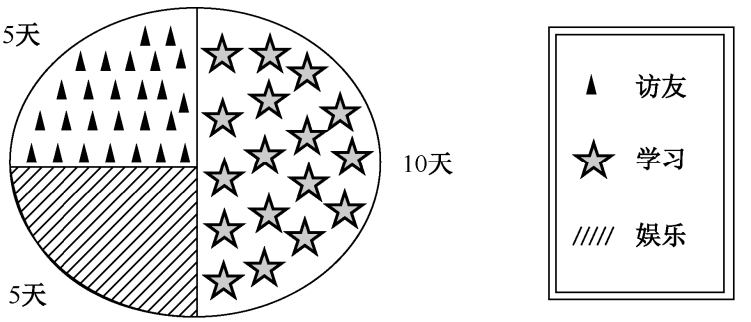
In my opinion, useful as the Internet is, the students had better make better and wiser use of it. Otherwise, it's impossible for us to benefit from it. Moreover, I also hope the parents will pay enough attention to their children using the Internet in their spare time.

Yours,
Li Hua

考点精炼 12

假如你叫刘涛，根据图表提示，给你的加拿大网友 Smith 写一封信，介绍你的寒假生活（共 20 天），可根据自己的实际情况添加细节。

注意 （1）词数 100 左右；（2）开头已经给出，不计入总词数。



Dear Smith,

How are you? How time flies! Now the winter vacation was over and I have come back to school again.

Yours,

Liu Tao

样题 13　E-mails 电子邮件

假如你是 Su Yang，下面是一封你的笔友 Alice 给你发来的 e-mail，请你根据 e-mail 的内容给她写一封回信，与她交流看法，并帮她排忧解难。

提示词语：listen to，mother's love，care about，communicate with，get along with，smile

注意

（1）语句通顺，书写工整；

（2）可用所给提示词语，也可以适当发挥；

（3）词数 100 左右。

Dear Su Yang,

I'm afraid I've got a big problem recently. My mother talks too much to me. She always tells me, "Be careful while crossing the street." "Put on more clothes." "Did you do a good job at school?" and so on. I'm annoyed. What shall I do?

Alice

思路点拨

本题是电子邮件，即网上的信件、邮件，属于应用文类型。一般电子邮件的格式与传统书信的格式基本相同。

【范文】

Dear Alice,

As a teenager, I met the same problem as you. But now I can get along better with my mother. Here are some ideas for you.

Your mother talks much because she cares about you. Maybe it's not a good way, but it shows your mother's love. So I think you should listen to her. If your opinions are different from your mother's, you can communicate with her, and tell her what you are thinking about.

If your mother doesn't take your advice, just keep silent and give her a smile. I hope what I say here can help you a lot.

Yours,

Su Yang

考点精炼 13

假设你叫李华，昨天收到了笔友 David 的 e-mail，得知他不久要到北京来学习中文。他想了解如何学好中文。请你用英文给他回复一封 e-mail，介绍学习中文的体会和方法，

提出你的建议，以及表达你帮助他学好中文的愿望。

注意

（1）语句通顺、意思连贯、符合逻辑、书写工整；

（2）可用所给提示词语，也可以适当发挥；

（3）词数 100 左右。

样题 14　Oral Notices 口头通知

假设你是李华，本周班会上，你将代表老师用英语口头通知学生参加一次敬老院的公益活动。内容要点如下：

1. 星期天早上 8:30 在校门口集合，乘公共汽车前往；
2. 给老人们赠送班级礼物；
3. 打扫卫生，整理房间；
4. 唱歌、跳舞、讲故事、聊天，给老人们带去快乐；
5. 活动很有意义，希望积极参与；

注意

词数为 100 左右，书面表达的开头已给出，不计入总词数。

Attention, please! I have something important to tell you. We will pay a visit to the old people's home this Sunday._____

思路点拨

本题是口头通知，发布人通常用第一人称，常用一般将来时，用词较口语化，句式简单。常用的开头语，如：“May I have your attention, please?”，“Attention, please! I have something important to tell you!”，“ Please be quiet.”等。最后要有结束语，如：“That's all. Thank you.”

【范文】

Attention, please! I have something important to tell you. We will pay a visit to the old people's home this Sunday. We'll have to meet at the school gate at 8:30 on Sunday morning and then go there by bus. There we will do some cleaning and tidy the rooms. After that we will have many activities, such as singing, dancing, telling stories and chatting to cheer up the old. Before we leave, we'll give our presents to them.

I hope all of us can take an active part in it. Through the meaningful activity, we can learn to care for the old. That's all. Thank you for your attention.

考点精炼 14

假如你是班长，请根据提示写一份口头通知。内容要点如下：

1. 本周末学校将召开运动会，时间从星期五到星期六。
2. 每个同学必须报名参加至少一个项目，越多越好，报名截止到星期三下午。
3. 星期五早晨 8:00 举行开幕式，校长将致开幕词，然后运动员入场。届时，将会有体操和武术表演。然后便开始比赛，请自带椅子在规定地点就座。

注意

（1）文章的开头与结尾已给出，不计入总词数；

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：截止时间 deadline，体操 gymnastics，武术表演 martial arts

Boys and girls,

May I have your attention, please? I have a good piece of news to tell you.

That's all. Thank you.

样题 15　Written Notices 书面通知

请以宿舍管理委员会的名义写一份开会通知，2014 年 4 月 2 日发出。内容如下：

1. 时间：4 月 5 日晚上 7 点。
2. 地点：3 号楼 103 房间。
3. 内容：学生宿舍安全问题，安全用电、火灾应变、防止失窃等。
4. 参加人员：每间寝室一名同学。
5. 要求：带笔记本，按时到场，做好记录，并传达给室友。

注意

（1）通知的格式已经为你写好，不计入总词数；

（2）词数 100 左右。

参考词汇：学生宿舍 dormitory，盗窃 theft（*n.*）

思路点拨

书面通知的格式，正文上面正中，往往用 NOTICE 或（Notice ）一词。正文表述可采用叙述形式，要写明所做事情的具体时间、地点、概括性内容、出席对象及有关注意事项，常用被动语态的句式。发出通知的单位名称一般写在正文后的右下角，也可写在 NOTICE 的正上方。发出通知的时间一般写在正文的左下角（在落款的下一行）或右上角（在 notice 的下一行）。发出通知的单位和被通知对象是最好用第三人称。

Notice

April 2nd, 2014

The Dormitory Committee

【范文】

Notice

April 2nd, 2014

A meeting is going to be held in Room 103 of Building 3 at 7 on the evening of April 5. Problems to be talked about at the meeting include the safety of the dormitories, proper use of electricity, what to do in case of fire, theft prevention and so on. A member of each dormitory is

required to be present. They should take notebooks with them and arrive on time. They should take notes carefully and after the meeting they are to inform their roommates of what is discussed and what measures will be taken.

The Dormitory Committee

考点精炼 15

假如你是学生会主席，请根据下面图表，用英语写一则关于春游的通知。

参 加 者	高中一、二年级的学生
活动内容	1. 去博物馆看《人与自然》的展览； 2. 游览云龙植物园。
集合地点	学校大门前
集合时间	1. 4 月 25 日上午乘校车前往； 2. 早上七点集合，七点二十分开车。
注意事项	1. 参观展览时保持安静；并认真记笔记，准备回来后讨论； 2. 在山顶野餐，要自带午餐和饮料； 3. 参加者在本周四前到学生会报名。

注意

（1）通知必须包括表内所列内容，可以适当调整内容的顺序和增加细节，使其连贯、完整。

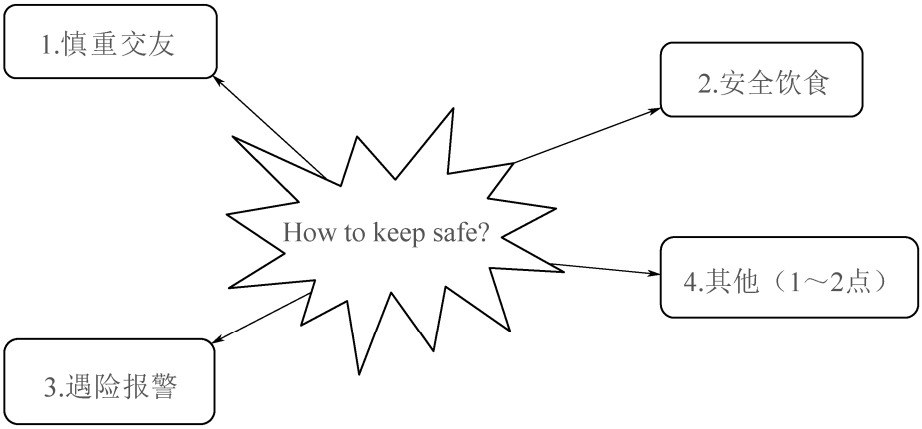
（2）词数 100 左右。

（3）通知时间：4 月 24 日

参考词汇：植物园 the botanical garden，报名参加 sign up for，学生会 the Students' Union

样题 16　Speeches 演讲稿

为了进一步增强中学生的安全意识，提高自我保护能力，某校开展了以“安全”为主题的英语演讲比赛。请你根据以下要点提示写一篇演讲稿。



注意

（1）内容必须包括所给的全部要点，可适当发挥；

（2）表达清楚，语句通顺，意思连贯，书写规范；

（3）词数 100 左右。

思路点拨

本题是演讲稿，从大的方面看，英语演讲稿实际上是属于一种特殊的说明文或议论文。英语演讲应该层次清晰，过渡自然，简洁扼要，直截了当，多用实词，多用短句，少用结构复杂的长句。

【范文】

How to keep safe?

Good afternoon, everyone! The topic of my speech today is "How to keep safe?"

As teenagers, we should keep safety in mind. But how can we keep safe? Here are some of my suggestions. First, we should be careful when making friends, especially on line. Second, if we are in danger, we must call the police for help in time so that we can keep ourselves safe. Also, we ought to eat healthily and safely. Eating food that goes bad will do harm to our health. Last but not least, summer is coming, and we must remember it's dangerous to swim in the river.

In short, safety must come first!

Thank you very much!

考点精炼 16

最近你们学校要举行一次“ 中学生该不该上网 ”的讨论。你是赞成者之一，认为我们不应该因噎废食。上网有许多益处：1. 看国内外新闻，获取信息；2. 发 e-mail，打电话；3. 上网络学校，阅读各种书籍，自学外语；4. 欣赏音乐，观看体育比赛，玩棋牌等游戏，网上购物，丰富我们的生活；5. 提高我们操作计算机的能力等。但是，中学生不要沉湎于（be given to）上网，以免影响生活和学习，也不要上不健康的网站。

请根据上面内容写一篇发言稿。

注意

（1）开头已经为你写好，不计入总词数。

（2）词数 120 词左右。

（3）不要逐句翻译。

参考词汇：沉湎于 be given to，因噎废食 throw away the apple because of the core

Hello, everyone! Today we'll talk about the topic "Should Middle School Students Surf the Internet?"

样题 17　Diaries 日记

假如你是某中专学校的一名学生，2015 年 4 月 10 日，星期五，天气晴朗，在放学回家的公交车上，你所经历的一件事让你印象深刻。请你根据以下要点用英语写一篇日记。

内容要点：一位老爷爷和十来岁的孙子上了车，老人拿着书包和小提琴；你给老人让

座，老人的孙子却坐了下来，老人只得站在旁边；孩子大声喊着向老人要水喝，并将空水瓶扔到车上；你认为孩子应该尊敬、照顾老人，保持环境卫生。

要求：

（1）词数 100 左右。

（2）日记开头已给出，不计入总词数。

（3）要点齐全，行文连贯，可适当发挥。

Friday　April 10, 2015　　Fine

On my way home on the bus, I saw _____

思路点拨

本题是日记，日记属于记叙文性质的应用文，常以第一人称记下当天生活中的所见、所闻、所做或所想的事情。英文日记通常由书端和正文两个部分组成。日记的书端左上角是专门写日记的星期、日期，右上角写当天的天气情况；日记的正文谓语动词多用一般过去时态。一般而言，在结尾要对前面的内容作总结，有自己的感想或体会。

【范文】

Friday　April 10, 2015　　Fine

On my way home on the bus, I saw an old man get on the bus with his grandson of about ten years old. He was carrying the boy's schoolbag and violin. I gave my seat to the old man at once. However, the boy sat down first, while the old man had to stand nearby. After a while, the boy shouted to his grandpa for water and then dropped the empty bottle on the bus. When I saw this, I got very angry. I think the boy should not only respect and take care of the old man but also keep the environment clean.

考点精炼 17

假如你是班长，2015 年 3 月 15 日，星期日，天气晴朗，你组织全班同学参加了一次敬老院的公益活动。请根据以下要点写一篇日记。要点如下：

1. 早上 8:30 在校门口集合，乘公共汽车前往；
2. 给老人们赠送了班级礼物；
3. 打扫卫生，整理房间；
4. 唱歌、跳舞、讲故事、聊天，给老人们带去快乐；
5. 活动很有意义，希望以后积极参与。

注意：词数 100 左右。

样题 18　Memos 备忘录

假如你是李华，想请学生服务部为每个宿舍安装电话。对于职业学校的学生来说，虽然有手机和网络，但是与外界的朋友、家长等用电话更方便、更便宜。请根据以上要点，给学生服务部写一份 100 词左右的备忘录，时间为 2015 年 3 月 5 日。

思路点拨

备忘录的格式：1. 在 to，from，date，subject 字样后填上相应的内容。2. 在上述字样下面空两行写正文。3. 可以不用称呼和结尾礼词。4. 发文人的姓名首字母写在与正文末行空一行的地方。

【范文】

MEMO

To: The leader of student service department

From: Li Hua

Date: March 5, 2015

Subject: Telephone

I would like to remind you that we are in want of a telephone for each dormitory. As a vocational school student, we need to cope with the daily increasing communications with teachers, friends and people outside the campus.

We need a telephone to get and send messages, which is important for us. Though most of us have mobile phones and e-mail addresses, a telephone in the dormitory is after all the most convenient and cheapest tool of communication. I hope that you will pay attention to this problem and solve it as soon as possible.

Li Hua

考点精炼 18

假如你是李华，由于你明天出差去北京一个星期，不能和大家商讨公司元旦联欢的事情，请给你的同事 Mary Chen 写份备忘录，时间是 2014 年 12 月 23 日，告诉你大家最后决定的时间和地点，以及所需的准备。

样题 19　Weather Forecast 天气预报

假如你是业余气象员李华，你从电台天气预报节目得知了今晚和明天上午你处的天气情况，晚饭后 6 点钟在校广播室用英语向全体师生做天气预报，并提出忠告。要点如下：

1. 午夜至凌晨两点有强劲北风；
2. 气温将下降 5～8℃；
3. 明天上午有阵雨；
4. 要求同学们今晚离开教室时关好门窗。
5. 明天早上起床时多穿些衣服，以防感冒。

注意

词数 100 左右。

思路点拨

天气预报常用一般将来时，也可用一般现在时。一般步骤如下：1. 先问候观众；2. 接着用一般现在时交代天气预报的时间段及地点；3. 接着用一般将来时陈述天气状况；4. 再

用一般将来时陈述天气的温度；5. 根据天气状况给听众一些提示；6. 表示感谢收听。

【范文】

Weather Forecast

Good evening, listeners!

It is six o'clock in the afternoon. I'm Li Hua. I'm now giving the weather forecast as usual. From midnight to 2:00 tomorrow morning there will be strong north wind blowing across our town and the temperature will drop by 5~8℃. Also there will be showers tomorrow morning. Therefore be sure to close all the windows when you leave your classroom tonight and when you get up tomorrow morning, please put on more clothes in order to keep yourself from catching cold.

That's all. Thanks for listening and enjoy your time.

考点精炼 19

假如今天是 11 月 10 日，你是江苏电视台天气预报员李华，现在预报今晚到明天的天气情况：今天夜间全省多云转阴有小雨，全省偏东风 3～4 级，明晨最低温度：沿江和苏南地区 6～7℃，其他地区 4℃左右，明天最高温度：江淮之间北部和淮北地区 8～9℃，其他地区 10～11℃。提示观众：明早气温较低，多穿衣服；出门时最好带好雨具。

参考词汇：偏东风 easterly wind，雨具 rain gear

样题 20　Comments 议论文

目前，购物不一定要去商场，我们可以在网上购物，这已成为新型的购物方式，它可节省时间，比较方便、容易；但一些人认为在网上看不到真实的物品，容易被欺骗。请根据自己的想法谈谈网上购物的利与弊。

注意

词数 100 左右。

思路点拨

议论文的写法：

1. 首先，要提出论点。

2. 然后围绕论点举一些例子，可以是名人或周围人说的话或具体事例来论证，也可以分正反两方面论证。

3. 结尾部分要阐明自己的态度：通常用 In my opinion, / From my point of view 等导出。

【范文】

Shopping online is quite popular in our daily life now. Some people think shopping online is very convenient. However, others don't believe goods online and they are afraid of being cheated.

In my opinion, shopping online is better. First, it can help us save much time. We don't need to spend much time in the street to look for the goods. Second, we can compare some goods and their prices at home. When the prices are listed, we can buy. Besides, we can pay for our goods after we get them. Don't you think it's a good way to go shopping?

考点精炼 20

醉酒驾车，已经成为严重的社会问题，越来越受到人们的关注，根据下面提示，写一篇 100 词左右的短文，谈谈你的看法。

现象	许多人不遵守交通规则，仍酒后驾车，对自己和他人的安全不负责任。
后果	因为酒后驾车，给自己和他人和很多家庭带来伤害。
建议	为了自己和他人的安全，呼吁司机不要酒后驾车，呼吁更多严格的规则和制度出台。

参考词汇：酒后驾车 drunk driving，不负责的 irresponsible

反侵权盗版声明

电子工业出版社依法对本作品享有专有出版权。任何未经权利人书面许可，复制、销售或通过信息网络传播本作品的行为；歪曲、篡改、剽窃本作品的行为，均违反《中华人民共和国著作权法》，其行为人应承担相应的民事责任和行政责任，构成犯罪的，将被依法追究刑事责任。

为了维护市场秩序，保护权利人的合法权益，我社将依法查处和打击侵权盗版的单位和个人。欢迎社会各界人士积极举报侵权盗版行为，本社将奖励举报有功人员，并保证举报人的信息不被泄露。

举报电话：（010）88254396；（010）88258888

传　　真：（010）88254397

E-mail：　dbqq@phei.com.cn

通信地址：北京市万寿路 173 信箱

　　电子工业出版社总编办公室

邮　　编：100036